

© 2008 Mirage Computer Systems GmbH

Version: 2.0 This document was updated: 09.08.2008

by Mirage Computer Systems GmbH

This documentation and the accompanying material are for informational purpose only and property of Mirage Computer Systems GmbH, Aulendorf. Information in this document is subject to change without notice. The names of companies, products, people, characters, and/or data mentioned herein are fictitious and are in no way intended to represent any real individual, company, product, or event, unless otherwise noted.

No part of this document and the accompanying material may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Mirage Computer Systems GmbH, Aulendorf.

All products and company names mentioned herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners.

Copyright © 2001 - 2006 Mirage Computer Systems GmbH. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

	Foreword	0
Part I	Using this Tutorial	11
Part II	Video Tutorial	14
Part III	Part I - Learning the Basics	17
1	About Part I	
	Latest Updates	
2	Service Pack 2.0.1	
2		
	Installation - Windows Vista - System Requirements	
4	Multimedia Protector - Background Information	
	About Multimedia Protector	
	Files which can be protected	
	The Multimedia Player	
	Copy Protection, Licensing, Evaluation	
	Copy Protection - How it works Available License Options	
	Evaluation Options	
	The License File	
	Content Protection	
5	Favored Flash/HTML/Conversion Tools	
	Adobe Captivate (Adobe)	
	Authorware (Macromedia)	
	Articulate Presenter (Articulate)	
	Camtasia (Techsmith)	
	Zinc (MDM)	
	Director (Adobe)	
	Flashform (Rapid Intake)	
	Flashpaper (Adobe)	
	Flash Video MX (Moyea)	
	HTML Executable (gdgsoft)	
	Lightroom (Adobe) Mediator (Matchware)	
	SWF Studio (Northcode)	
	swftools (swftools.org)	
	Toolbook (SumTotal)	
	Turbodemo (balesio)	
6	Getting started	50
	Start Screen	50
	Welcome Screen	52
	Online Help / Tutorial	
	Opening a Project	
	Demoversion	
	Standard or Premium ?	
	The work environment	
	How TOs and FAQ	

Sample Projects	57
Screen - Settings	58
Basic Settings	59
Activation Options	60
About Activation	60
Activation by E-Mail	62
Online Activation	63
Activation by Fax	66
Activation by Phone	68
Screen - License Information	69
License Type	69
Evaluation Time	71
Licence Options	73
Time limited version after activation	73
Advanced Protection	74
Content Protection Only	
Screen - Image	77
Splash Image	77
Registration Image	78
Screen - Data Import	80
About Data Import	80
Import Files	83
Screen - Player Options	85
Display Options	85
Converting Options	87
Screen - Save	89
Create CD / Save	89
Create ZIP file / Save	91
Cancel without Saving Project	92
Test Project	92
View Deploy Folder	
Upload files to Activation Server	
Error during uploading files	95
Manually upload Files	96
Adding an Installer	97
Screen - Administration	98
About Administration	
Miscellaneous Administration Functions	99
About Multimedia Protector - Version information	101
Check for Updates	101
Repair and Compress Project File	102
Web Activation Server	103
Display quick introduction help / Welcome Screen	106
Enable Error Tracking	107
Show License Information	108
Creating Serial Numbers and Keys	109
Format of a Key	109
Create Serial Number Key	110
Create one single Serial Number	110
Create a Key List	112
Unlock Key	113
Create Unlock Key with Copy Protection	116
Create Unlock Key without Copy Protection	
Create Unlock Key using Web Activation Server	118

	Contents	5
	Additional Licenses	
	USB Stick	
	Create a new Project	122
	Create a new Project	122
	Project File Name	123
	The Project Folder	124
	Copy a Project	125
Part IV	Part II - Enhanced Features	128
1	About Part II	
2	Activation and Registration Screens	128
	Start Screen of the Multimedia Player	128
	Online Activation	129
	Activation by E-Mail	131
	Activation by Fax	132
	Activation by Phone	133
	Enter Unlock Key	134
	Activation Successful	135
	Evaluation Period Expired / No evaluation version	136
	Copy Protection Violation	138
	No free license available	138
	Licence Viewer	139
3	Add-Ons	140
	Music Player	141
	Configuration of the Player	
	Include Player in Project	
	Photo Album	144
	Album 1	147
	Album 2	148
	Include Photo Album in Project	150
	Airtight	150
4	Details about Copy Protection	153
	The Basics about Copy Protection	153
	Hardware IDs	154
	Transferring Hardware IDs	155
	Volume ID (1)	155
	MAC Address (2)	155
	Hostname (3)	157
	NetBIOS Computer Name (4)	
	Volume ID + UNC Pathname (server licence) (5)	
	MAC Address + UNC Pathname (server licence) (6) USB Stick (11)	
5	Distribute the Project	
	The Basics about Distributing a Project	160
	Distribute a CD/DVD	
	Distribute via a download link	
	Using Multimedia Protector Installer	
6	Executables (exe file)	
	Secure standalone exe file(s)	166
		166 167

	Read Configuration Data	173
	EXE protection with extensive requirements	174
7	Files which can be protected	
	Native Protection	
	SWF (Flash)	
	FLV (Video)	
	JPG (Photo / Image)	
	MP3 (Music)	
	EXE Files	
	PowerPoint using PPT Viewer	177
	Conversion necessary	
	AVI, MPEG, Quicktime, Windows Media Video	
	СНМ	
	HTML	
	MDI	
	PDF	
	PDF Conversion to Flash	
	PDF - Disable Printing	
	PowerPoint (PPT)	
	Use PowerPoint Viewer	
	PPTConversion to Flash	
	PPT with Hyperlink	191
	PPT - Disable Printing	
	WAV	193
	WORD, VISIO, EXCEL, Office Documents	
	Word with Hyperlink	
	Office Documents - disable printing	195
8	Flash Development	
	Configuration Files	
	Start EXE or BAT files	
	Store Data	
	Start a specific file inside the database	
	HTML Starter file	
9	Integration in Online Shops	
	About Shop Integration	
	Cleverbridge	
	Build a key list with Serial Numbers	
	Upload Serial Numbers	
	Define Delivery Text	
	Upload Project Files	
	Define Delivery Details - Download Link	
	Creating order specific Serial Numbers	
	Build configuration file	
	Send files to Cleverbridge	
	Define Delivery Text	
	Upload Project Files	
	Define Delivery Details - Keygenerator	
	Define Delivery Details - Download Link	
	Element5/Sharelt	
	Build a key list with Serial Numbers	
	Upload Serial Numbers	
	Define Delivery Text	
	Upload Project Files	

Contents

7

	Define Delivery Type	
	Creating order specific Serial Numbers	
	Build configuration file	
	Send files to Element5 / Share-it!	
	Define Delivery Text	
	Upload Project Files	
	Define Delivery Type	
10	How TOs and FAQ	227
	How can I print this Tutorial?	227
	Application is not running as expected	228
	Application loads - configuration text is missing	228
	How to activate Multimedia Protector	228
	Buy Serial Number	230
	Online Activation	230
	E-Mail Activation	231
	Enter Unlock Key	233
	Reinstall Software	233
	Your Multimedia Protector License	234
	Apply Activation Key	234
	How do I find my Serial Number for Multimedia Protector?	237
	How to make a time limited evaluation / trial licence?	238
	How to prolong an evaluation / trial version?	239
	How to make a full version with expiry date / time limitation?	240
	How to make a version without registration?	241
	How to make a licence which is limited to one person?	241
	How to invoke external files?	242
	How to protect the content but do not use Copy Protection?	242
	How to protect? - search by file type	242
	AVI, MPEG, Quicktime, Windows Media Video	243
	CHM (help file)	244
	Executables (exe file)	246
	FLV (Video)	247
	HTML	247
	JPG (Image)	248
	MP3 (Music)	248
	PDF	249
	PDF with Hyperlink	250
	PPT (PowerPoint)	251
	PPT with Hyperlink	253
	SWF (Flash)	254
	WAV	254
	WORD, VISIO, EXCEL, Office Documents	255
	Word with Hyperlink	256
	Which files can not be protected?	257
	How to make a bootable CD / DVD	257
	Which flash version is supported?	
	How to make a CD menu / start menu	258
	How to start different MMF files with one Multimedia Player?	258
	How to edit an XML file	
	How to secure Macromedia Director / Authorware / other flash tools	
	How to protect an application written in .NET, VB, Delphi, C or other development languages?	259
	Can I use my own Player	
	How can I view a swf (flash) file?	
	Where can I buy Multimedia Protector?	260

	How do I uninstall Multimedia Protector	
	I found no answer for my questions	261
11	Installation Manager for Harddisk and Network	
	Configuration File - Setup.ini	262
	Single User Installation	
	Network Installation	
12	Menu Creator	
	Advanced Menu	
	Basic Settings	
	Define Menu Headlines	
	Toolbars and language selection	
	Include Menu in Project	279
	Basic Menu	280
	Define Menu	
	Include Menu in Project	
	Other Menus	
	CDMenuPro	
	Quick Menu Builder	
13	Multimedia Player	
	Multimedia Player - Start Options	289
	License Viewer	289
	Basic license information	291
	Module Information	293
	Deactive a network license	293
	Activate a log file	295
14	Network License - how it works	
	Licence per PC	297
	Licence Per User / Person	298
	Network Licence Per Concurrent User	298
	Network Licence per Server	299
	How to add additional users / licences within a network?	
15	Problems - Trouble Shooting - Error Messages	
	FLV file does not load	301
	Player Error Messages	301
	Project Generator Error Messages	
	Activation Server Error Messages	
	I found no answer for my questions	
16	Split project into several databases	
17	Transfer a license from PC A to PC B	
18	Update your projects	
19	USB stick as a Dongle replacement	
	Deliver the USB stick with Copy Protection already activated	
	Use USB stick of the customer	
~~	Install Application on hard disk using USB stick	
20	Workflow - from Distribution to Activation	
	The Basics about Workflow	
	Create Files for Distribution - Deploy	
	Evaluation Version	
	Buy Serial Number	
	Online Activation	321
	Activation by E-Mail, Phone, Fax	

8

		Contents	9
21 Web Activa	tion Server		324
About O	nline Activation		324
Online A	ctivation - Step by Step		325
Web Ad	ninistration Interface		326
Hosting	of the Web Activation Server		326
Activati	on Server for Testing		326
22 Your Multin	nedia Protector License		328
Demove	rsion		328
Browse	your License		329
Apply A	ctivation Key		330
Licence	Agreement		333
Index			338



1 Using this Tutorial

This tutorial presents an easy way of learning how to use Multimedia Protector. It is designed for authors, technical writers, documentation specialists, developers, and anyone else who wants to provide copy protected multimedia files.

This tutorial is no longer updated as there is a new main release available. Update to version 2.1 - <u>click here for details.</u>

While completing these lessons, you will learn how to develop a project, to deploy the project and to use advanced features like Web Activation or integration into online shops.

Part I gives you a foundation for using Multimedia Protector features, including using styles and creating links. Part II provides hands-on experience of using additional features like menu creator, online shop integration or using the Web Activation Server.

The Online Tutorial will be updated even after the release. In case you do not have Internet access, use the tutorial *Help-English.chm* on your hard disk.

Updates

Install the latest Service Pack



- <u>Support of Adobe Lightroom</u> 43 and new photo album <u>Airtight</u> 150
- Support of Quick Menu Builder 286
- Update your content 311
- <u>Video Tutorial</u> 14 for all basic steps
- You can use an USB stick to deliver copy protected files [312]
- Password for EXE files 168
- Split project into multiple databases 305
- Support of CDMenuPro 284
- EXE files read configuration data 173

Copyrights and Trademarks

Copyright © 2005-2008 Mirage Computer Systems GmbH. All rights reserved.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. The software described in this document is furnished under a <u>license agreement or non-disclosure agreement</u> The software may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of those agreements.

This documentation and the accompanying material is for informational purpose only and is property of Mirage Computer Systems GmbH, Aulendorf. Information in this document is subject to change without notice. The names of companies, products, people, characters, and/or data mentioned herein are fictitious and are in no way intended to

represent any real individual, company, product, or event, unless otherwise noted.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or any means electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use without the written permission of Mirage Computer Systems.

All products and company names mentioned herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners. http://www.mirage-systems.de

Multimedia Protector Version: 2.0

This document was updated: 09.08.2008



2 Video Tutorial

Multimedia Protector also comes with a video tutorial. The tutorial covers the basic steps and is the perfect start if you don't like reading.



Tutorial - First Steps for Beginners

The video tutorial requires **audio** (headset or PC speaker). The Tutorial was made with <u>Adobe Captivate</u> (swf files) and is protected with Multimedia Protector.



After the download, the files are copied to a temporary folder and the tutorial starts automatically.

Instead of downloading, you can view the Tutorial as a standard flash file in the Browser (unprotected version).



Tutorial - Product Activation

This tutorial demonstrates, how the user activates the product - using Online, E-Mail, Fax or phone activation.

Start Video Tutorial for product Activation



3 Part I - Learning the Basics

3.1 About Part I

The lessons in the first part of this tutorial introduce Multimedia Protector's essential functions. After completing them, you'll be familiar with creating and configuring a basic project. This tutorial comes with a project already created for you (there's only a minimal amount of typing required at the beginning of Part I) - the project name is *flash-demo. mme*.

In Part I, you will learn:

- About 20 Multimedia Protector
- <u>Copy Protection, Licensing, Evaluation</u>
- Getting started 50
- <u>Screen Settings</u> 58
- <u>Screen Licence Information</u>
- <u>Screen Image</u>
- Screen Data Import
- <u>Screen Player Options</u>
- <u>Screen Save</u> 89
- <u>Screen Administration</u>
- <u>Create a New Project</u>

3.2 Latest Updates

The latest main program version is version 2.0.

Display Modification History version 2.0

■ Check for Updates / Update eligibility

If you are using a trial version, you can use the download link you got with an e-mail, to download the

Use the <u>automatic update check</u> to ensure that you are always working with the latest version.

You will find your current version number in the screen administration, using the About Multimedia

Note: Updates can only be applied if your update subscription has not expired. You find your subsc administration, using the <u>Show License Information</u> [108] link. The module **Online Update** must not be not today's date to make the comparison but the inbuilt release program.

Example

- Release date 02/14/2008 (14.02.2008)
- Online Update eligibility expired 02/20/2008 (20.02.2007)
- Today: 03/16/2008 (16.03.2008)

Although today the Online Update eligibility has expired, it was not expired at the release date. The that you can install an update at any time you like.



Subscription Expired

If your subscription has expired but you bought a subscription, check your order confirmation e-mai **Key** for the update subscription. <u>Apply this key</u> in your **currently installed** Multimedia Protector confirmation e-mail, contact <u>cs@cleverbridge.com</u>.

Download Update

The latest updates can be downloaded here

Update Procedure

- Download the update from the website or through the automatic updater
- Start the file mpupdate20.exe
- You have to select the folder with the **old** Multimedia Protector version (default ...Multimedia Protector\1.3). This folder is needed to check the update eligibility. After this initial check you can install Multimedia Protector
- We strongly recommend installing the version on a new directory (default is ...\2.0) and never install it on the directory with the old version

3.2.1 Service Pack 2.0.1

The service pack installs automatically if you have Automatic Update Check enabled. You also can <u>manually check for updates.</u>

Modifications of this Service Pack.

If you don't have internet access on the PC where you are using Multimedia Protector, you can install the update as follows:

- <u>Click here to download update</u>
- Copy the file mpupdate201.exe into the installation folder of Multimedia Protector default is ..\Multimedia Protector\2.0 or ..\Multimedia Protector Premium\2.0
- Start mpupdate201.exe

3.3 Installation - Windows Vista - System Requirements

The Multimedia Protector installer adds a program manager group called Multimedia Protector 2.0.

Multimedia Protector requires a read/write access to the installation folder (default .. \programs\Multimedia Protector 2.0). The Windows Vista standard user does not have this authorization. Multimedia Protector adds it during installation.

The same applies to the distribution of the Multimedia Player which runs on the user system.

If your secured application is stored on a network, the administrator has to add read/write access for all users.

If you use a <u>CD installation</u>, the Multimedia Player will add the necessary authorization automatically during program start.

Multimedia Protector runs on **Windows NT to Windows Vista** and always needs the latest service packs.

A user does not need to have a flash or another player like PPT or PDF reader installed. All necessary components are included in the Multimedia Player, no installation

20

will be required and the protected application can be started even directly from CD.

3.4 Multimedia Protector - Background Information

3.4.1 About Multimedia Protector

Multimedia Protector allows to protect **Flash**, **Video**, **Music** and other file types like **PDF or Office Documents (Word, Powerpoint).** Every document that can be printed with a printer driver can be protected. Multimedia Protector offers evaluation features and software copy protection - ALL IN ONE.

All files of a project (e.g. Flash project with Video, Music and other files) are **encrypted into** <u>one single file</u> **into**. The files are played in the memory to prevent that the original files can be captured from a temporary folder while played. A unique <u>Multimedia Player</u> **is used to play the files**.

Multimedia Protector comes with <u>predefined workflows</u> [316] - no programming is necessary.

All types of license and copy protection is supported:

- <u>Time limited versions</u> 24
- Software Copy Protection 22
- <u>Network license per PC and per User</u> (only Premium Edition)
- <u>Online Activation 324</u> (only Premium Edition)
- Integration in Online shops 201 (only Premium Edition)

A user does not need to have a flash or another player like PPT or PDF reader installed. All necessary components are included in the Multimedia Player, no installation will be required and the protected application can be started even directly from CD.

3.4.2 Files which can be protected

The Multimedia Protector offers a native support of **SWF** (Macromedia Flash) files, **FLV**, **JPEG**, **EXE**, **MP3** and other file types by converting these files to flash files.

At least one SWF, FLV or EXE file is needed. This file can start any video, music or image files that are supported by the standard flash players.

See chapter - <u>How to convert a file</u> 174 - for details.

Below find a list of all supported file types and the steps which are necessary to protect each file.

• AVI, MPEG, Quicktime, Windows Media Video

- <u>CHM</u> 181
- <u>Executables EXE files</u> 165 (only <u>Premium</u> 56 version)
- <u>FLV (Video)</u> 176
- <u>HTML</u> 182
- <u>JPG (Image)</u> 176
- <u>MP3 (Music)</u> 177
- <u>PDF</u> 183
- <u>PPT (Powerpoint)</u>
- PPT with Hyperlink 190
- <u>SWF (Flash)</u> 176
- <u>WAV</u> 193
- Word, Visio, Excel, Office Documents
- Word with Hyperlink 194

3.4.3 The Multimedia Player

The Multimedia Player is the piece of software which runs on the customer machine. It includes the in-built functionality of playing flash files in the memory (and not on the hard disk) and performs the defined licensing 2^3 and copy protection 2^2 schemes.

The Multimedia Player is a unique application which controls:

- Evaluation Options 24
- Copy Protection 22
- Network licensing
- <u>Content Protection</u>

The Multimedia Player and the encrypted file can be distributed on CD / DVD or via a download link. It **does not require installation or registration on a PC** - just start the Multimedia Player to display the protected files. It also does not require the installation of a flash player. Flash version 9 is supported.

Even while played a file is protected. It is not temporarily stored on the hard disk drive but played in a kind of virtual disk within the memory.

The Multimedia Player comes with a ready to go <u>menu creator</u> which allows to select single files - e.g. make a menu for chapter I, chapter II, chapter III, and to define which files to be started.

The Premium version comes with an ready to go installer tool, which offers an automated installation and creates a program manager group.



This is the icon of the Multimedia Player

A user does not need to have a flash or another player like PPT or PDF reader installed. All necessary components are included in the Multimedia Player, no installation will be required and the protected application can be started even directly from CD.

3.4.4 Copy Protection, Licensing, Evaluation

3.4.4.1 Copy Protection - How it works

Multimedia Protector offers a media independent protection - the media itself like CD / DVD, download link or USB stick is not modified or protected. The copy protection does not prevent, that you can copy the data from CD to the hard disk but **it prevents that the application can be started on multiple machines.**

The license is bound to a **specific hardware ID of the PC** (e.g. MAC address). The Multimedia Player will start only, if the <u>license file</u> is located on the specified hardware. This works both in a single user environment and in a network environment.

The advantage of a software copy protection is:

- media independent distribute the application via CD / DVD, download, USB stick or other media where you can store files
- the application can run without a CD / DVD inserted
- you can produce even one single CD no need to have 1000 CDs duplicated at once
- no problems with the CD / DVD drives or operating systems because no physical modification (like modification of the CD) is done

The additional step, which is necessary, is to transfer the hardware IDs. With <u>Online</u> <u>activation</u> 32^{1} , this step is automated. With activation by <u>e-mail</u>, 13^{1} <u>fax</u> 13^{2} or <u>phone</u> 13^{3} this is a manual process.

The following hardware IDs are supported:

- Volume ID
- MAC Address of the network adapter
- Hostname
- Netbios Name
- Volume ID and UNC Pathname
- MAC Address and UNC Pathname

Details as well as pros and cons about each criteria can be found in Part II - <u>Details</u> about Copy Protection [153]

Copy Protection is enabled automatically (default option), but it is possible to make a full version without Copy Protection (see: <u>How to protect the content but do not use Copy</u> <u>Protection?</u> [242]) and to protect the content only.

3.4.4.2 Available License Options

Multimedia Protector supports 3 different types of license:

- Licence per User
- Licence per PC (only option in Standard version)
- Licence per Concurrent User

Licence per User (Person)

The Windows User name is licensed. Each user starting the Multimedia Player will need a license. The windows user name is written into the license file 24.

This type of license requires a Licence for each User, but only one Licence per PC. If 2 users would share 1 PC this would result in 2 user licenses, but only in 1 PC license.

Licence per PC

This is often the default license type. Each PC starting the Multimedia Player needs a license. The PC name is written into the <u>license file</u> 24. This type results in a smaller number of licenses than with the Licence per User type (e.g.: if 2 users share 1 PC, 2 Licences per User are needed, but only 1 PC license).

If the application runs on a Citrix / Terminal server, the hostname of the local PC and not the hostname of the server will be used.

Licence per Concurrent User

This is a typical license in a huge multi-user environment. The Multimedia Player can be installed on an unlimited number of machines, but the number of concurrent (simultaneous) users are counted and limited to the specified number. The license is assigned only as long as the Multimedia Player is running. If the Multimedia Player is terminated, the license is available again. If a user logs in with the same user name on 2 different PCs, 2 licenses will be used.

Multimedia Protector offers a sophisticated verification of concurrent user licenses. Machines that hang or have crashed are detected and the license is released. This is done automatically through the Multimedia Player.

The network license and Licence per User as well as Licence per Concurrent User is available only in the Multimedia Protector <u>Premium</u> [56] version.

Oconcurrent user is not supported when the main application is an **EXE file** [165].

All license types also work in a Terminal Server and Citrix environment. The license information can be displayed within the Licence Viewer 139.

See also <u>How to distribute a network version</u>. 296

3.4.4.3 **Evaluation Options**

24

The evaluation version allows starting the Multimedia Player for a specific time without registration. During each program start the days left for evaluation are displayed.

The following evaluation options are possible

- Limit number of days after installation
- Limit until a specified expiry date
- Just display evaluation screen to register, but always allow a program start
- No evaluation version registration is mandatory
- No evaluation version Multimedia Player can be started without registration (content protection only)

3.4.4.4 The License File

Multimedia Protector uses a license file (extension .lic) for storing license information. This file is modified during the program start and during activation. The user needs read and write access for the file.

This is especially important in a network environment or if distributing the application via CD/DVD.

1 Always make a backup of the license file if you start the Multimedia Player directly. The license file is modified with each start and cannot be used any longer for distribution.

3.4.4.5 Content Protection

The file content and the file itself is protected. At no time there will be an access to the original format like flash, PDF or Word.

Content Protection

All files are imported into **one single data file which is encrypted**. Only this data file is distributed and not the original files. This makes sure that only the encrypted data file is visible on the distribution media, but the data file itself is not accessible.

Access Protection

The weak point of any protection tool is the timeframe during which the file is displayed in the player. Normally, a player copies the file to a temporary folder on the hard disk drive which can be detected and the file can be captured unprotected.

Not so with Multimedia Protector. The file is directly loaded from the encrypted database into the memory. At no point during displaying the file will be accessible on the hard disk drive.

The Multimedia Player runs in a mode which does not allow saving and printing the file.

U The access protection is not available for EXE (executables) files 165.

3.5 Favored Flash/HTML/Conversion Tools

If you use tools which produce a SWF file, the swf file should actually run with the Multimedia Player. Sometimes, special settings will be necessary. We have tested some tools and described the necessary settings.

- <u>Adobe Captivate</u> ²⁶ (Adobe)
- <u>Authorware</u> ²⁶ (Macromedia)
- <u>Articulate Presenter</u> 27 (Articulate)
- <u>Camtasia</u> 32 (Techsmith)
- <u>Zinc</u> 37 (MDM)
- <u>Director</u> 37 (Adobe)
- <u>Flashform</u> (Rapid Intake)
- Flashpaper 39 (Adobe)
- Flash Video 39 MX (Moyea)
- <u>Mediator</u> 47 (Matchware)

26

- <u>HTML Executable</u> 42 (gdgsoft)
- <u>SWF Studio</u> 48 (Northcode)
- <u>Swftools</u> 48 (swftools.org)
- Toolbook 48 (Sum Total)
- <u>Turbodemo</u> (balesio)

3.5.1 Adobe Captivate (Adobe)

For protecting files created with Adobe Captivate (<u>www.adobe.com</u>) you have 2 different options:

Create Flash file(s)

As Adobe Captivate can create flash files, this is the recommended option. It is the most secure solution but could have limitations if you use special functions, which are not supported by the Multimedia Player.

- Save the project as flash (swf)
- Now import **ALL S** files **S** (swf, html, js..) and make **xy_skin.swf** the start file.



Create executable (EXE) file

Create one executable file and protect the executable file with Multimedia Protector. See chapter: Secure standalone exe file 166. This supports all options of Adobe Captivate but with the limitation of the EXE protection 165.

3.5.2 Authorware (Macromedia)

For protecting files created with Authorware you have 3 different options:

- 1. Generate a swf flash. If the file runs in the standard flash player, it will run with Multimedia Protector. This is the most secure solution to protect the **content of the flash file** but could have limitations if you use special functions, which are not supported by the standard flash player
- 2. Create one executable file and protect the executable file with Multimedia Protector. See chapter: <u>Secure standalone exe file</u> [166]. This supports all options of Authorware but with the <u>limitation of the EXE protection</u> [165]

3. Make a Source Code integration using the Licence Protector DLL. This is the most flexible solution - <u>www.Licence-Protector.com</u> but requires development work. It allows to protect **application features**.

3.5.3 Articulate Presenter (Articulate)

To secure applications created in Articulate Presenter (<u>www.articulate.com</u>) the following steps are necessary.

Select Publish in Articulate

Select the option CD, check: Create Autorun files and press Publish

Publish		
articulāte [:] PRESENTER	CD	PUBLISH YOUR PRESENTATION TO FLASH FOR CD DELIVERY.
🚱 Web	Publish Location	
a Articulate Online	Folder C:\test\samplearticula	ite
		e protected with Multimedia Protector
🥑 CD ,	Logo: (None selected) Presenter: (None selected)	▼ ▼
Word	Output Options	
Project Files	🔲 Zip 🛛 Create autorun files	
∞5		Publish Cancel

Move Folders

Articulate creates the following folder structure.

📔 data	22.08.2007 19:08	Dateiordner	
🚺 player	22.08.2007 19:08	Dateiordner	
articon.ico	27.07.2007 11:38	Icon	22 KB
artpresenter.exe	27.07.2007 11:38	Anwendung	36 KB
autorun.inf	22.08.2007 19:08	Setup-Informatio	1 KB
layer.html	22.08.2007 19:08	HTML-Datei	11 KB
📄 player.html	22.08.2007 19:08	HTML-Datei	11 KB

The folder data should look like this

🍌 swf	22.08.2007 19:17	Dateiordner	
📄 playerproperties.xml	22.08.2007 19:17	XML-Dokument	12 KB
🔮 presentation.xml	22.08.2007 19:17	XML-Dokument	15 KB

It seems that Articulate uses some special directory functions which are not working within Multimedia Protector. You have to move folders.

Move the content of the folder **player** to the folder **data**. The folder data will have this structure now.

	-		
鷆 swf	22.08.2007 19:17	Dateiordner	
🗑 ast_alert.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	45 KB
🗑 ast_loader.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	46 KB
🗑 ast_navicons.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	2 KB
🖥 ast_notes.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	10 KB
🖥 ast_remote.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	10 KB
🗑 ast_vidpresenter.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	73 KB
🖹 attach.html	27.07.2007 11:38	HTML-Datei	1 KB
🖹 blank.html	27.07.2007 11:38	HTML-Datei	1 KB
🔊 button.gif	27.07.2007 11:38	GIF-Datei	4 KB
🕈 flashcommand.js	27.07.2007 11:38	JScript-Skriptdatei	21 KB
🖥 infopanel_standard.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	44 KB
🖥 logopanel.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	2 KB
mod_colorizer.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	41 KB
🖥 mod_colorizer_lib.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	21 KB
🖥 mod_engage.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	19 KB
🖥 mod_exit.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	27 KB
🖥 mod_reference.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	36 KB
🖥 null.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	1 KB
🖹 playerproperties.xml	22.08.2007 19:17	XML-Dokument	12 KB
🖥 playershell.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	5 KB
presentation.xml	22.08.2007 19:17	XML-Dokument	15 KB
🖥 slidegroup.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	2 KB
📅 stealthray.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	117 KB
🛋 zoom.html	27.07.2007 11:38	HTML-Datei	2 KB

Copy Start Application

To run with Multimedia Protector, a special start application is needed. Copy the file **startarticulate.swf** and the configuration **file config.xml** from the Multimedia Protector installation folder ...**tools\articulate** to your folder **...\data**

The folder \data contains now these files:

- All original files from the folder data and the subfolder \swf
- All files from folder \player
- Startarticulate.exe and config.xml

🍌 swf	22.08.2007 19:17	Dateiordner	
🛅 ast_alert.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	45 KB
🚋 ast_loader.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	46 KB
📷 ast_navicons.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	2 KB
📷 ast_notes.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	10 KB
📷 ast_remote.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	10 KB
📷 ast_vidpresenter.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	73 KB
attach.html	27.07.2007 11:38	HTML-Datei	1 KB
📄 blank.html	27.07.2007 11:38	HTML-Datei	1 KB
🖻 button.gif	27.07.2007 11:38	GIF-Datei	4 KB
🖹 config.xml	22.08.2007 18:38	XML-Dokument	1 KB
🕈 flashcommand.js	27.07.2007 11:38	JScript-Skriptdatei	21 KB
📷 infopanel_standard.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	44 KB
📷 logopanel.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	2 KB
📷 mod_colorizer.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	41 KB
🚋 mod_colorizer_lib.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	21 KB
📷 mod_engage.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	19 KB
📷 mod_exit.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	27 KB
📷 mod_reference.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	36 KB
📅 null.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	1 KB
🔮 playerproperties.xml	22.08.2007 19:17	XML-Dokument	12 KB
m playershell.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	5 KB
presentation.xml	22.08.2007 19:17	XML-Dokument	15 KB
📷 slidegroup.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	2 KB
startarticulate.swf	24.01.2007 14:23	Flash Movie	56 KB
🗑 stealthray.swf	27.07.2007 11:38	Flash Movie	117 KB

Import Files

Now <u>import</u> all the files from the project folder \data and mark startarticulate.swf as startfile us starting file. A red icon signals the start file.

The import screen would show the following files.



If you are using additional files from an Engage project, these files will not work because they run only in a Browser based application.

If you use .flv files inside the presentation, convert the .flv files to flash - see <u>video</u> converter. 179

3.5.4 Camtasia (Techsmith)

For protecting files created with Camtasia (<u>http://techsmith.com</u>) you have 2 different options:

Create Flash file(s)

As Camtasia can create flash files, this is the recommended option. It is the most secure solution but could have limitations if you use special functions, which are not supported by the Multimedia Player.

• Select

Custom production settings

Select Custom production settings

33



• Select
Flash/FLV - Adobe Flash Output

Select Flash/FLV - Adobe Flash output

34

Production Wizard	
	u like to produce your video? way in which you would like to use the Production Wizard.
Recommended	
 Flash ((SWF/FLV) - Adobe Flash output
Other formats	
🕞 💿 wmv -	- Windows Media streaming video Help me choose a file format
🗿 💿 моv -	QuickTime movie
avi 🔘 AVI via	deo
📕 🔘 iPod/iT	Funes - Specialized iPod/iTunes video format
mp3 🔘 MP3 at	udio only
🧼 🔘 RM - R	RealMedia streaming media
🔍 💿 CAMV	- Camtasia for RealPlayer streaming media
🗑 🔘 GIF an	nimation file
Additional output	options
Create MP3	File: 44.100kHz, Stereo, 96kBits/sec
Create iPod I	File: High 🔻
Include PPT I	File: C:\Program Files\TechSmith\Camtasia Studio 5\Media\Sti
	< Zurück Weiter > Abbrechen Hilfe

• Select
Flash Template and Options

Production Wizard		×
Flash Templates Choose a Flash template and whether to includ Picture (PIP)	e a table of contents	(TOC) and Picture in
Appearance	Size	
Template:	Eit in:	1280x1079 (original)
	Video:	1280x1024 pixels
One video with PIP 💙	PIP:	N/A
Therese	Other:	1280x55 pixels
Theme:	Total:	1280x1079 pixels
		Change Dimensions
Flash Options		Change Dimensions
Preview		
Vic	leo	
		PIP
Con	trols	00:00 / 00:00
Pre <u>v</u> iew -	ick <u>W</u> eiter >	Abbrechen Hilfe

• Use option = Flash . Select Flash Version 7 or higher

sh Options			
deo Controls			
	short, low-motion screen vi onger, or high motion video		Target Flash Version:
SWF			
<u>C</u> olors:	Automatic 🖌	Frame <u>r</u> ate:	Automatic 🖌
Use <u>J</u> PEG comp	ression		
Low quality 🖉		High quality 50	%
FLV	_		
Frame rate:	Automatic 🗸	Video Codec:	VP6
Max Bitrate:	300 🗸	Key Frame Rate:	5 seconds
Bitrate Control:	Variable 1-Pass 💉		
Video <u>Q</u> uality;	Low quality		— High quality 80 %
Background Color.			
<u></u>			
		OK Abbred	chen Ü <u>b</u> ernehmen Hilfe

• Now import 33 ALL 33 files 33 (swf, html, js..) and make xy-controller.swf the start file

If the result of the flash video is not satisfying, create an AVI video in Camtasia and convert it with Moyea Flash Video MX - <u>http://www.moyea.com</u> to the swf format.

Create executable (EXE) file

Create one executable file and protect the executable file with Multimedia Protector. See chapter: <u>Secure standalone exe file</u>. This supports all options of Camtasia but with the <u>limitation of the EXE protection</u> [165]

As Camtasia flash files are often very large we recommend splitting the files into multiple projects (e.g. lessons).

36
3.5.5 Zinc (MDM)

For protecting files created with Zinc you have 3 different options:

- Generate a swf flash. If the file runs in the standard flash player, it will run with Multimedia Protector. This is the most secure solution to protect the **content of the flash file** but could have limitations if you use special functions, which are not supported by the standard flash player
- 2. Create one executable file and protect the executable file with Multimedia Protector. See chapter: <u>Secure standalone exe file</u> 166. This supports all options of Zinc but with the <u>limitation of the EXE protection</u> 165
- 3. Make a Source Code integration using the Licence Protector DLL. This is the most flexible solution <u>www.Licence-Protector.com</u> but requires development work. It allows to protect **application features**

3.5.6 Director (Adobe)

For protecting files created with Macromedia Director you have 3 different options:

- Generate a swf flash. If the file runs in the standard flash player, it will run with Multimedia Protector. This is the most secure solution to protect the **content of the flash file** but could have limitations if you use special functions, which are not supported by the standard flash player
- 2. Create one executable file and protect the executable file with Multimedia Protector. See chapter: <u>Secure standalone exe file</u> 166. This supports all options of Macromedia Director but with the limitation of the EXE protection 165
- 3. Make a Source Code integration using the Licence Protector DLL. This is the most flexible solution <u>www.Licence-Protector.com</u> but requires development work. It allows to protect **application features**.

3.5.7 Flashform (Rapid Intake)

For protecting files created with Flashform (<u>http://www.rapidintake.com</u>) you have 2 different options:

Create Flash file(s)

As Flashform can create flash files, this is the recommended option. It is the most secure solution but could have limitations if you use special functions, which are not supported by the Multimedia Player. Right now, FLV files loaded within Flashform are not supported.

Select Publish Course

Select Publish Method **CD-ROM**, Check - *Use Flash Cookies* and Operating System *Windows*.

ublish Settings		
ublish Course		Publish Help
Publish Method	CD-Rom 🔻	
CD-Rom		
	the course, burn all the files to a CD-F player.exe file (windows) or player.hqx	
Use Flash Cookies 🗸		
Operating System	Windows 💌	
Publish Car	icel	

• Now import 33 ALL 33 files 33 (swf, html, js..) and make player.swf the start file

Create executable (EXE) file

Use the player.exe which comes with flashform and protect the executable file with Multimedia Protector. See chapter: Secure standalone exe file 166. This supports all options of Flashform but with the limitation of the EXE protection 165

Select Publish Course

Select Publish Method **CD-ROM**, Check - Use Flash Cookies and Operating System *Windows*.

		Part I - L	earning the Basics	39
Publish Settings				
Publish Course			_ Publish He	lp (
Publish Method	CD-Rom	•		
CD-Rom				
Once you have published learner must access the p bookmarking				
Use Flash Cookies 🗹				
Operating System	W	ndows 💌		
Publish Can	cel			

~~

• Now import as ALL as files as (exe, swf, html, js..) and make player.exe the start file

3.5.8 Flashpaper (Adobe)

Printer driver to create a flash file from any document. Works perfect if you do not have hyperlinks inside the document.

See chapter: Office documents 194

3.5.9 Flash Video MX (Moyea)

This converter allows you to convert videos to flash (swf). During the conversion process you can add a player control (mandatory for Multimedia Protector) and you can define the video quality, screen resolution etc.

Define Video Quality

You can define the quality of the video on this page

40	Multimedia Pi	rotector					
	🔣 Flash Vid	leo MX Pro					
	Open Files	File Settings	Output Set	tings Beginning &	End Convert		<u>F</u> i
			n a lu				
		ct a flash video enc	oding profile: M	edium Quality 🔻 🔻			
	Video Settings						
	🗌 Re	size video		Video Codec:	Sorenson H.263	 ✓ What's this? 	
	Width:			Frame Rate:	Original 👻	Frames Betweer	n Keyfrar
	Height	: 250 🗘	Maintain ratio	🔄 Fade in	Fade out	Add a vide	eo befor
	-Video (Encoding Quality					
		ality: Mediur	n 🔻	Video Bit Rate:	171 🗘 kbps		
		ely frames:	45	Estimated output file si:		Add a vide	eo after I
		table for Internet de					
		cable for incented de	lively]		
	Include Aud						
	Sample F	Rate: 44100	▼ Hz	Bit Rate: 96	kbps	Volume: 10)0 🔻
	Channel	s: standard	l stereo 🛛 🔻	Fade in	Fade out		
	- Rep	place original audio	with				

		oop Audio					
		oop nooio					
	🔣 Batch I	Encoder				🔶 Back (<u>B</u>)	- 🧼 N

Define Output

Select Generate SWF

Part I - Learning the Basics	<u>s</u> 41	
🛃 Flash Video MX Pro		
Open Files File Settings Output Settings Beginning & End Convert		<u> </u>
Export settings Misc		Float
Export to(no extension) C:\Program Files\Multimedia Protector Premium\1.3\Derr		
Generate FLV file	🗹 Generate t	humbnail file
Generate SWF file	📃 Generate H	HTML file
Embed video to SWF file		
Play the outside FLV file	How to use an	n independent Fl
✓ Generate a jpg file as the first frame for the output ("Output file name "+"_FirstFrame.jpg")		?
Batch Encoder	🔶 Back	(B) 🔸 N

Then select a Player control (toolbar which allows to start, stop, pause, rewind). This is mandatory because Multimedia Protector does not provide an player toolbar. You can select a design and a lot of other player settings.

Player Settings

42	Multimedia Protector		
	🛃 Flash Video MX Pro		
	Open Files File Settings	Output Settings Beginning & End Convert	<u> </u>
	Export settings Player settings	<image/>	Float
	Select a flash player profile:	Automatically load and play the movie	▼ S <u>a</u>
	Control Bar none Classic Common Crystal Gentle Green Green_Big Iron Novel Peaceful Plastic	 Auto load Unload on stop Buffer time Auto hide mouse Auto rewind Min width Min height Keep aspect Advanced settings Player extend 	Big play button
	🛃 Batch Encoder		🔶 Back (B) 🚽 🕩 N

• Now import the files (swf) and make the .swf file the start file. If you have multiple videos then add a menu [273] and make the menu the start file.

3.5.10 HTML Executable (gdgsoft)

HTML Executable from gdgsoft (<u>www.htmlexe.com</u>) creates from HTML files one single exe file. This exe file can now be licensed and protected by Multimedia Protector.

- Create the EXE file with HTML Executable
- Protect the executable file with Multimedia Protector. See chapter: <u>Secure standalone</u> <u>exe file</u> [166]

3.5.11 Lightroom (Adobe)

For protecting files with Adobe Photoshop Lightroom (<u>http://www.adobe.com/products/photoshoplightroom/</u>) the following steps are necessary.

Select a Gallery

First select the option **Web**, and then one of the standard galleries.



Depending on the selected gallery, the steps are a little bit different.

Airtight AutoViewer

Import and make viewer.swf the start file

Multimedia Protector - lightroom [C:\tmp\ightroom 1.3.1\gallerytest\lightroom-test\lightroom.mme]

Data Impo			
C:\tmp\jghtroom 1.3.1\galleryte	st\ightroor Rea	ad Files from Folder	Define as sta
Select Data Folder	Re	fresh Selected Files	Delet
How to protect?	Media File		State ok
Audio / Music EXE Files Images / Photos PDF Files PPT Files	 gallerydata.xml images\dsc02377.jpg images\dsc02379.jpg images\dsc02380.jpg images\dsc02381.jpg images\dsc02382.jpg images\dsc02383.jpg 		ok ok ok ok ok ok
Videos Word Documents HTML How to use a menu?	 images\dsc02384.jpg images\dsc02441.jpg images\dsc02442.jpg index.html viewer.swf 		ok ok ok ok ok
<u>Advanced Menu</u> Basic Menu	Use advanced menu		
Settings License Information	Data Import	Player Op Save	

■ Airtight PostcardViewer

Import as ALL as files (swf, html, js..) and make viewer.swf the start file

45



Airtight Simple Viewer

Import 33 ALL 33 files 3 (swf, html, js..) and make viewer.swf the start file

Data Import

Enter the path of the folder or click on Select Data Folder

C:\tmp\jghtroom 1.3.1\galler	ytest\lightroor Read Files from Folder	Define as st
Select Data Folde	er Refresh Selected Files	Dele
	Media File	State
How to protect?	🔷 gallery.xml	ok
	images\dsc02377.jpg	ok
Audio / Music	🔷 images\dsc02379.jpg	ok
EXE Files	Images\dsc02380.jpg	ok
	Images\dsc02381.jpg	ok
Images / Photos	images\dsc02382.jpg	ok
PDF Files	images\dsc02383.jpg	ok
PPT Files	images\dsc02384.jpg	ok
Videos	images\dsc02441.jpg	ok
Word Documents	images\dsc02442.jpg	ok
	🔷 index.html	ok
HTML	🔷 swfobject.js	ok
	thumb\dsc02377.jpg	ok
How to use a menu?	thumb\dsc02379.jpg	ok
Advanced Menu	thumb\dsc02380.jpg	ok
	thumb\dsc02381.jpg	ok
Basic Menu	thumb\dsc02382.jpg	ok
	thumb\dsc02383.jpg	ok
	thumb\dsc02384.jpg	ok
	thumb\dsc02441.jpg	ok
	thumb\dsc02442.jpg	ok
	low viewer.swf	ok
	Use advanced menu	
Settings	Image	Player Options
License Information	Data Import	Save

- Lightroom Flash Gallery
- First copy from the folder ... \tools \lightroom all files to your folder with the Lightroom Flash Gallery

configstarter.xml	09.04.2008 18:51
📷 flashstarter.swf	08.04.2008 12:32

• Import as ALL as files (swf, html, js..) and make flashstarter.swf the start file



3.5.12 Mediator (Matchware)

For protecting files created with Mediator you have 2 options:

- 1. Generate a swf flash. If the file runs in the standard flash player, it will run with Multimedia Protector. This is the most secure solution but could have limitations if you use special functions, which are not supported by the standard flash player
- 2. Create one executable file and protect the executable file with Multimedia Protector. See chapter: <u>Secure standalone exe file</u> 16. This supports all options of Mediator but with the limitation of the EXE protection 165

3.5.13 SWF Studio (Northcode)

48

For protecting files created with SWF Studio you have 2 options:

- 1. Generate a swf flash. If the file runs in the standard flash player, it will run with Multimedia Protector
- 2. Create one executable file and protect the executable file with Multimedia Protector. See chapter: <u>Secure standalone exe file</u> [166].

3.5.14 swftools (swftools.org)

This is a freeware tool to convert PDF files into flash.

For more details see chapter: PDF conversion to flash [184]

3.5.15 Toolbook (SumTotal)

To secure applications created in Toolbook ($\underline{www.toolbook.com}$) the following steps are necessary.

Copy your .spo file (this file will be protected) to a new project folder.

□ Copy Start Application and .SPO File

To run with Multimedia Protector, a special start application is needed. Copy the file **starttoolbook.exe** and the configuration **file configstarttoolbook.ini** from the Multimedia Protector installation folder ...**tools\toolbook** to your folder **..\project**

The folder \project contains now these files:

- Your .spo file
- starttoolbook.exe and configstarttoolbook.ini

Configure INI File

Open configstarttoolbook.ini with a standard editor. You have to change these item:

[Start]

File=**sample.spo** (name of your .spo file) FilenameTaskManager=**Sample Application** (name of your toolbook application which is displayed in the title bar - normally the application name. This name is also displayed in the task manager.)

Save the configuration file.

Import Files

Now import all the files from the project folder and mark starttoolbook.exe as startfile using the

file. A red icon signals the start file.

The import screen would show the following files.

🧕 Multimedia Protector - simp	le [C:\kundendaten\MP-Projekte\toolbook\simple san	nple\simple.mme]	
Data Impo			
Protector Premium\1.3\Demodata			Define as star
		\equiv	
Select Data Folder	Refresh Selected Files		Delete
	Media File		State
How to protect?	♦ configstarttoolbook.ini		refresh
	sample.spo		new
Audio / Music	I starttoolbook.exe		refresh
EXE Files			
Images / Photos			
PDF Files			
PPT Files			
<u>Videos</u>			
Word Documents			
How to use a menu?			
Advanced Menu			
Basic Menu			
	Use advanced menu		
	Note: All imported files are extracted at runtime on a temp	orary folder.	
Cottings		Player Options	
Settings		Player Options	\leq
Licence Information	Data Import	Save	

3.5.16 Turbodemo (balesio)

50

For protecting files created with Turbodemo (<u>www.turbodemo.com</u>) you have 2 different options:

Create Flash file(s)

As Turbodemo can create flash files, this is the recommended option. It is the most secure solution but could have limitations if you use special functions, which are not supported by the Multimedia Player.

- Save the project as flash (swf)
- Now import 33 ALL 33 files 33 (swf, html, js..) and make xy.swf the start file

Create executable (EXE) file

Create one executable file and protect the executable file with Multimedia Protector. See chapter: <u>Secure standalone exe file</u> [166]. This supports all options of Turbodemo but with the <u>limitation of the EXE protection</u> [165].

3.6 Getting started

In this lesson, you will open the tutorial project that is installed with Multimedia Protector and familiarize yourself with the work environment. Using a sample file Flash-Demo will allow you to begin to explore Multimedia Protector .

3.6.1 Start Screen

After starting Multimedia Protector the main start screen appears. You can select a Skin and a Language to customize Multimedia Protector.

Skin

A skin changes the look & feel (design) of the application. Just try to find the one you like best.

Language

Select your language.

Skin with MacOS



3.6.2 Welcome Screen

52

By default, the Welcome Screen is opened in addition to the <u>Start Screen</u> 50. This screen provides you with:

- Links to most popular FAQs to get started
- Link to the Online Knowledge Base
- Link to updates

The screen can be deactivated by checking *Do not display this Quick Introduction help anymore when starting* and activated again in the Administration Screen, Miscellaneous TAB, *Display Quick Introduction help*



How to convert PDF files

How to convert PPT files

How to create a time-limited licence

How to distribute a network version

How to activate Multimedia Protector

If you have any questions which are not answered by this tutorial, search in the **Online Knowledge Base**

www.Multimedia-Protector.com

Do not display this Quick Introduction help anymore when starting

Close

3.6.3 Online Help / Tutorial

54

You can start the Online Help / Tutorial any time within Multimedia Protector by clicking on the icon ¹

3.6.4 Opening a Project

Within the <u>Start Screen</u> (50), you can either

- Open the last project
- Browse the file directory to select a project

Open the last Project

On the right screen, the last used project is displayed. Just click on the project name to open the project.

Select a Project

Click on Open existing Project. A windows file dialog will appear. You can open all files

with the extension .MME. Open Flash-Demo.MME to work with this tutorial.



(*)* It is not possible to open the same project twice at the same time.

Version 1.3.2.331 🕐

3.6.5 Demoversion

56

The demo version has the following restrictions:

- Limited by days normally 15 days
- During the program start of the Multimedia Player a message is displayed: This is an unregistered Version of Multimedia Protector

All other parts of the application are fully functional.

Demo versions are available for the *Standard* and Premium version on the website <u>www.</u> <u>Multimedia-Protector.com</u>. See: <u>Standard or Premium Version</u> 56? for differences.

The Online Activation can be tested with the project *flash-demo.mme* (only with Premium version).

3.6.6 Standard or Premium ?

Multimedia Protector comes in a *Standard* and *Premium* version. The *Standard* version is designed for single user installations and activation of the software by E-Mail, Fax or Phone.

The *Premium* version includes more functionality:

- <u>Network license</u> ²³ per User, PC and Concurrent User
- Online Activation and option requires Web Activation Server 324
- Shop Integration 201

Check out the <u>feature comparison matrix</u> which provides you with all the details to decide, which version is right for you.

3.6.7 The work environment

Take a moment to familiarize yourself with the work environment:

In the upper pane window the configuration screen is displayed. The selected category like Settings or Licence Information is displayed in the heading section of the configuration screen.

In the lower pane window the navigation buttons can be found. They allow to select a category like Settings or Licence Information and provide access to the online help.

57

Multimedia Edition - f	lash-demo [C:\Programme\1.1\Democ	lata\flash-demo.mme]	- 8	
Settings				
Product Name Company Name Link to Web Shop	Multimedia Edition - Flash Demo Mirage Computer Systems GmbH http://www.mirage-systems.de/licence-protectc	Name of Player Default Customer Name Link to Help	flash-demo Evaluation http://www.mirage-systems.info/onlinehe	
Select Registration Methods				
Use E-Mail for Registration Default method E-Mail address of Sender Subject of E-Mail	registerflashdemo@registerserver.net Registration reqeuest for Flash Demo	Use Online Activation for Reg Default method URL to Web Activation Service Allow changing of URL	gistration http://registerserver.net/lpweb/lpws.asmx	
Use Phone for Registration Default method Phone number to register	+49 700 54885342	Use Fax for Registration Default method Fax number to register	+49 721/151599638	
Text for E-Mail and Fax The unlock key will be sent within 1-2 business days.				
Navigation button				
Settings License Information	Image Media Data	Player Options Finish	Administration	

3.6.8 How TOs and FAQ

You find Frequently Asked Questions as well as tips and tricks in Part II, chapter How TOs and FAQ [227].

3.6.9 Sample Projects

Multimedia Protector comes with samples for a wide range of applications. You find the samples in the installation directory of the folder **.\demodata.** To work with the samples, <u>open 54</u> the .mme file, press the button **Save**, then **Distribute / Save ...** and finally **<u>Test</u> Project Now ...**

Document Sample

Document-Demo.MME - Start Menu (created with <u>Menu Creator</u> 273) with different document types (<u>PDF</u> 183], <u>Word</u> 194], <u>PPT</u> 186], <u>Video FLV</u> 176].

This project allows testing the online activation with the Web Activation Server 324.

- Open 54 the project document-demo.mme in the folder ... \demodata
- Create a <u>Serial Number</u>

• Save the project 89

Now make a live test. Copy the files from the folder ...\demodata\document-demo\deploy to a test directory and start document-demo.exe.

- Activate the product online [321] using the Serial Number you have created
- Find your activation on the Web Activation Server using the demo account of the Web Administration Interface 326

Other samples

- Flash-Demo.MME Flash file with animation and music
- FLV.MME Video in FLV format 176
- Photo-Album1-Demo.MME Photo Album Sample 1
- Photo-Album2-Demo.MME Photo Album Sample 2 148

3.6.10 Screen - Settings

Define Basic program settings like program name and activation options.

🞗 Multime dia Protector - flash-demo [C:\Programme\1.3\demo data\flash-demo.mme] 🤤 🤤				
Settings				
Product Name	Multimedia Edition - Flash Demo	Name of Multimedia Player	flash-demo	
Company Name	Mirage Computer Systems GmbH	Default Customer Name	Evaluation	
Link to Web Shop	http://www.mirage-systems.de/licence-protectc	Link to Help	http://www.helpserver.biz/onlinehelp/lpm	
Select Registration Options				
Use E-Mail for Registration		Use Online Activation for Regi O Use as default option	stration	
E-Mail address	registerflashdemo@registerserver.net	URL to Web Activation Service	http://registerserver.net/lptest/lpweb/l	
Subject of E-Mail	Registration reqeuest for Flash Demo	S Allow changing of URL		
Use Phone for Registration		Use Fax for Registration		
Phone number to register	+49 700 54885342	Fax number to register	+49 721/151599638	
Text for E-Mail and Fax				
The unlock key will be sent with	hin 1-2 business days.			
Settings	Image	Player Options	Administration	
Licence Information	Data Import	Save)	0

3.6.10.1 Basic Settings

The upper part of the Settings screens allow defining the basic product settings:

Product Name

This name is displayed in the registration screens and in the title bar of the Multimedia Player.

Company Name

The company name is displayed in the registration screens.

Link to Web Shop

If a link is specified, a BUY button will be displayed in the registration and activation screens. This link should move you directly to the order page.

Name of the Multimedia Player

This is the name which is assigned to all <u>distributed files</u> (Multimedia Player and files to distribute). It can be different from the product name.

Example:

Product name: Multimedia Flash Demo Name of the Player: Flash-Demo

Default Customer Name

Name that is displayed in the Licence Viewer, until the Serial Number and real customer name is typed in. Default: Evaluation

Link to Help

If this hyperlink is specified, a Help Icon 0 will be displayed for all product activation screens. The link should direct to a website that offers help during the registration process.

Default: <u>http://www.helpserver.biz/onlinehelp/lpmme/2.0/player/help/index.html</u>. This offers a generic help for the registration process including a Video Tutorial. You can alternatively use your own online help.

Start Video Tutorial for product Activation

	Multimedia	Protector
--	------------	-----------

60

Settings	ash-demo [C:\Programme\1.3\demod	ata\flash-demo.mme]	
roduct Name ompany Name nk to Web Shop elect Registration Options	Multimedia Edition - Flash Demo Mirage Computer Systems GmbH http://www.mirage-systems.de/licence-protectc	Name of Multimedia Player Default Customer Name Link to Help	flash-demo Evaluation http://www.helpserver.biz/onlinehelp/lpm
Use E-Mail for Registration Use as default option E-Mail address Subject of E-Mail	registerflashdemo@registerserver.net Registration reqeuest for Flash Demo	Use Online Activation for Regi OUse as default option URL to Web Activation Service Allow changing of URL	istration http://registerserver.net/lptest/lpweb/l
☑ Use Phone for Registration ○ Use as default option Phone number to register	+49 700 54885342	Use Fax for Registration Use as default option Fax number to register	+49 721/151599638
ext for E-Mail and Fax The unlock key will be sent witl	in 1-2 business days.		
Settings	Image	Player Options	Administration

Screen - Settings

3.6.10.2 Activation Options

3.6.10.2.1 About Activation

To activate a product means turning on <u>Copy Protection</u> 2^2 and running the software with the <u>specified license options</u> 2^3 .

There are 4 options to activate a product

- <u>Online Activation</u> wia Web Activation Server
- Activation by E-Mail 62
- Activation by Fax 66
- Activation by Phone

Which activation method to choose depends on the line of business and the number of

61

copies sold. The activation options can be combined, e.g. use 3 out of the 4 options. You can define a default activation method with the option *Use as default option*.

Online Activation

Preferred option for medium and large sales.

- + Allow automating the delivery process
- + No administration personnel needed
- + works 24 hours customer can activate any time
- Internet connection required
- Could be blocked by application firewalls
- Web Activation Server needed

Activation by E-Mail

Preferred option if Online Activation is not available. Should be used as an second option in combination with Online Activation

- + Almost available on any PC
- + No firewall problems
- Internet connection required
- Customer has to wait for the Unlock Key
- Administration personnel needed
- Automation of delivery process not possible

Activation by Fax

Alternative option if Online Activation is not available.

- + Good option as an alternative activation method
- Fax required
- Customer has to wait for the Unlock Key
- Administration personnel needed
- Automation of delivery process not possible

Activation by Phone

Alternative option if Online Activation is not available.

- + Almost everybody has a phone
- Only available during business hours
- Administration personnel needed
- Automation of delivery process not possible

3.6.10.2.2 Activation by E-Mail

Enables Activation by E-Mail. For Activation details see About Activation.

Select the checkbox: Use E-Mail for Registration If this is to be the default activation method, select: Use as default option

E-Mail address

A valid E-Mail address to receive the registration data.

Subject of E-Mail

The subject line of the registration E-Mail.

Example: Registration of Multimedia Edition

Text for E-Mail and Fax

Additional text which is used in the registration E-Mail.

Sample: The Unlock Key will be sent within 1-2 business days.

Screens and Workflow for E-Mail activation

Below find the user screens and workflow during e-mail activation.

The E-Mail Activation requires the Serial Number, company name and e-mail address. After filling out the screen, an e-mail with the hardware IDs and license information will be generated. You have to send one key back to the customer to activate the copy protection (see screen Enter Unlock Key 134). Details of the workflow. 322

This activation option is defined in the screen - Settings 62



Screen - E-Mail Activation

After filling out the screen, select: **Request Unlock Key by E-Mail - send E-Mail**. This will open your default E-Mail client. An e-mail with the hardware IDs and license information will be created. Press **send** to send the e-mail to our activation center. You will get an **Unlock Key** back within 2-3 business days.



E-Mail Activation -Send E-Mail

Create Unlock Key

The Unlock Key is generated in the TAB Administration, <u>Create Unlock Key with Copy</u> <u>Protection</u> [116] or <u>Create Unlock Key without Copy Protection</u>. [117] If you are using the Web Activation Server, then see <u>Create Unlock Key using the Web Activation Server</u>. [118]

Enter Unlock Key

After requesting the Unlock Key by E-Mail, the screen shown below will appear during each start of the program. Type in the Unlock Key you got back by e-mail or fax. Press the button *Next*. If the Activation is successful, the screen <u>Activation finished</u> is displayed.



Enter Unlock Key

3.6.10.2.3 Online Activation

Enables Online Activation. For Activation details see About Activation.

Select the checkbox: Use Online Activation for Registration. If this is to be the default activation method, select: Use as default option

URL to Web Activation Server

The http: address of the Web Activation Server. Mirage offers a hosting of the Web

Activation Server - see details 326.

Example: http://registerserver.net/hostingnumber/lpweb/lpws.asmx

The address is automatically assigned if you have configured the <u>link to the Web</u> Administration Interface 103 in the administration screen.

The URL has to end with lpws.asm

We provide an Activation Server for testing. Just add this link to test an online activation with your product. *http://registerserver.net/9999999/lpweb/lpws.asmx*

See chapter: <u>Activation Server for Testing</u> [326] for all necessary configuration options.

Allow changing of URL

Allows changing the URL during the Web Activation process. This makes sense if you have a backup server running.

This feature is available only in Multimedia Protector <u>Premium</u> between version. To use Online Activation the Web <u>Activation Server</u> and is required.

Screens and Workflow for Online activation

Below find the user screens and workflow during online activation.

The Online Activation requires the Serial Number, company name and e-mail address. Then the license will be verified online and activated. No additional step will be required. Details of the workflow [321].

This activation option is defined in the screen - <u>Settings</u> 3.

65

🌱 Activation of Multimedia Edition	- Flash Demo	X
Solution Production and Law restances	Online Activation Enter Serial Number 578U0-31CC9-9AF7m-AZ87n-Dd18N-0Q1FH You can not find your Serial Number?	
Serial Number If you don't have a valid Serial Number you can buy the software.	Enter Name/Company Tom Hanks Enter your E-Mail Address	
Buy it Please enter all information that is requested in order to start the activation process.	Tom.Hanks@smartinc.com	
Show Licence Information	You can also request an unlock key by E-Mail You can also request an unlock key by Fax You can also request an unlock key by Phone Back	Next

The activation process is transparent for the customer.

Web Activation			
A module has to be activated online.			
Please provide a connection to the internet and activate it.			
Proxy settings			
Activate now Cancel			

Web Activation

Activation in progress...



Web Activation		
Online Activation was success	ful.	

The screen: Activation Successful 135 is displayed

3.6.10.2.4 Activation by Fax

Enables Activation by Fax. For Activation details see About Activation.

Select the checkbox: Use Fax for Registration If this is to be the default activation method, select: Use as default option

Fax number to register

A valid fax number to receive the registration data. You should use an international format like +49 721/151599638.

Text for E-Mail and Fax

Additional text which is used in the registration Fax

Sample: The Unlock Key will be sent within 1-2 business days.

Screens and Workflow for Fax activation

Below find the user screens and workflow during fax activation.

The Fax Activation requires the Serial Number, company name and e-mail address. After filling out the first screen, a print page with the hardware IDs and Serial Number will be generated. You have to send one key back to the customer to activate the copy protection (see screen Enter Unlock Key [134]). Details of the workflow. [322]

This activation option is defined in the screen - Settings

Activation of Multimedia Edition	i - Flash Demo
L conce Productor	Request Unlock Key by Fax Enter Serial Number (\$40-4100-4100-4000-4000-4000-4000-4000-4
Serial Number If you don't have a valid Serial Number you can buy the software.	Tom Henks
Bury it Please enter all information that is requested in order to start the activation process.	Enter your E-Mail Address Ton Iranis Banafric can Ton Iranis Banafric can The address of the set to the Activitien Center. The will reasi an E-Mail or Para catherer and readown to school the set there.
	rear containing intometor to unloc the software. Browest Utilick Key by Fax - own! Fax
Show Licence Information	Tou can also activate the unfloane scribe Tou can also result at unledd fee for E-Hall Tou can also result at unledd lew for Phone Back Next

Fax Activation

Request Unlock Key

After filling out the screen, select: **Request Unlock Key by Fax - print Fax**. This will open a report with the hardware IDs and license information. Press **print** to print the report and then fax it to the number provided in the report. You will get an **Unlock Key** back within 2-3 business days.



The unlock key will be sent within 1-2 business days. Project: flash-demo - MCR001

Fax Activation - Print Fax

Create Unlock Key

The Unlock Key is generated in the TAB Administration, <u>Create Unlock Key with Copy</u> <u>Protection</u> **116** or <u>Create Unlock Key without Copy Protection</u>. **117** If you are using the Web Activation Server, then see <u>Create Unlock Key using the Web Activation Server</u>. **118**

Enter Unlock Key

After requesting the Unlock Key by E-Mail, the screen shown below will appear during each start of the program. Type in the Unlock Key you got back by e-mail or fax. Press the button *Next*. If the Activation is successful, the screen <u>Activation finished</u> is displayed.



Enter Unlock Key

3.6.10.2.5 Activation by Phone

Enables Activation by Phone. For Activation details see About Activation.

Select the checkbox: Use Phone for Registration If this is to be the default activation method, select: Use as default option

Phone number to register

A valid phone number to receive the registration data. You should use an international format like +49 700/54885342.

Screens and Workflow for activation by phone

Below find the user screens and workflow during phone activation.

The Phone Activation requires the Serial Number and company name. After filling out the first screen, a screen with the phone number and also displaying the hardware IDs and Serial Number will pop up. The Unlock Key can be entered directly in this screen. Details of the workflow. [322]

This activation option is defined in the screen - Settings [132]



Phone Activation - Step 1

Request Unlock Key

Now call the phone number which is displayed. First specify the **Serial Number**. You will then be asked for one Installation code. Type in the Unlock Key you get and press the button *Apply Key*.

Y Activation of Multimedia Edition	Flash Demo	×	
Li conce Li conceltario Manticettario	Request Unlock Key by Phone Please dal the number +49 700 54885942 to activate Multimedia Edition - Flash Demo. When asked you should tell your Serial Number 67810:31520-94F7m-A287n-0518N-0Q1FH and one of the following installation codes.		
About Unlocking	No Installation Code 01 6F7820C8	-	
Enter all received keys to unlock the software.	02 728CAD9C 03 8880A280 04 8880A280		
	05 9F530083 06 2ACAFD2C		
	07 2D818C98 08 06805EC8 09 8AA3248A		
	If you have received information to unlock Multimeda Editon - Flach D Kerg0. If there is more than one key, enter one key after another in enter keys in a case-sensitive manner.		
	Apply Key		
Show Licence Information		Back Next	
Phone Activation - Step 2			

Create Unlock Key

The Unlock Key is generated in the TAB Administration, <u>Create Unlock Key with Copy</u> <u>Protection</u> [116] or <u>Create Unlock Key without Copy Protection</u>. [117] If you are using the Web Activation Server, then see <u>Create Unlock Key using the Web Activation Server</u>. [118]

3.6.11 Screen - License Information

Define license type like single user or network license and evaluation options.

Multimedia Protector - flash-demo	C:\Program Files\1.3\demodata\flash-demo.mme]	0 🖯
_icence Infor	mation	,
	nation	
Type of licence per		
Benutzer Computer		
Gleichzeitige Benutzer		
Number of Computers	1	
Evaluation Time		
Number of days to evaluate	15	
End of Evaluation	Clear Expiration Date	
No evaluation version - Serial Nur	her needed to start	
1		
Check for system date modification	n	
Licence Options		
Time limited version after Activati	n	
💽 Runtime - number of days	0	
🔵 Runtime - Expiry Date	Clear Expiration Date	
Advanced Protection		
No Activation (content protection	only)	
		(
Settings	Image Player Options	Administration
Licence Information	Data Import Save	(

Tip: For testing a project check - No Activation - this allows testing without the need to browse through the activation dialogs.

3.6.11.1 License Type

For information about licensing see <u>available license options</u> 23.

Select one of the 3 possible license types. Licence per:

• PC

70

- User / Person
- Concurrent user

Non-network license

If the application is a non-network application (installation on a single PC), choose license per **PC** and number of PCs = 1. This is the only option in the Standard version. For details about the user license see Licence per PC 297.

Non-network license / single user installation

If the application is a non-network application (installation on a single PC) AND you want to limit it to one user, choose license per **User** and number of users = 1. For details about the user license see Licence per User / Person 298.

Network license

Select one of the 3 possible license types and the number of users/PCs you want to allow during evaluation. See also <u>How to distribute a network version</u>. 296

The network license and license per User as well as Concurrent User is available only in the Multimedia Protector Premium 56 version.

U The number of users or PCs for the full version can be changed with an <u>Activation Key</u>

O For network installations, the <u>number of users / PCs</u> has to be set to 99999 if **no** limitation is required.

71

Multimedia Protector - flash-demo [C	Multimedia Protector - flash-demo [C:\Program Files\1.3\demodata\flash-demo.mme]		
Licence Inforr	nation		
Type of licence per			
Benutzer			
Computer Gleichzeitige Benutzer			
Number of Computers	1		
Evaluation Time			
Number of days to evaluate	15		
End of Evaluation	•	Clear Expiration Date	
No evaluation version - Serial Numb	er needed to start		
Check for system date modification			
Licence Options		_	
Time limited version after Activation			
Runtime - number of days	0		
Runtime - Expiry Date		Clear Expiration Date	
Advanced Protection			
<u> </u>			
No Activation (content protection o	nly)		
Settings	Image	Player Options	Administration
Licence Information	Data Import	Save) @

Screen - Licence Information

If a user connects through a remote connection using a tool like Remote Desktop, Citrix, Terminal Server or gotomypc, it depends on the tool if the remote connection counts as a separate license. For most tools, Multimedia Protector retrieves the PC name of the remote PC and counts the connection as a new license.

Oconcurrent user is not supported when the main application is an EXE file 165.

3.6.11.2 Evaluation Time

Defines whether the application is available for evaluation or not. During each program start the days left for evaluation are displayed.

Number of days to evaluate

Days for evaluation, beginning with the first start of the Multimedia Player. Setting days to 0 allows using the software **without time limitation** but offers an option for registration.

End of Evaluation

This can be used as an alternative to number of days for specifying a final expiry date. The button **Clear Expiry Date** deletes an expiry date. O You can combine both values - e.g. allow 15 days after installation but end the trial at the latest on 31.12.2006. The date occurring first is used.

<u>No evaluation version – Serial Number needed to start</u>

There is no evaluation period. The Multimedia Player can be started only after <u>activation</u> of the software. The first screen the user will get (see screen <u>No evaluation version</u> (136) requires to enter a Serial Number.

Check for system date modification

Enables a check, if the system date is modified back **more than 1 day**. This option will stop the application if the date was turned back.

You have to send the user a special key to turn off this lock.

Create key to turn off system date lock

If the user gets an error screen that the system date was modified, you have to send him an Unlock Key with or without copy protection

- Unlock Key with Copy Protection [116]
- Unlock Key without Copy Protection [117]
- Test time limitation

To test how the time limitation is working, do **not** turn back the system date. Make a timelimited version which runs for one day (number of days to evaluate = 1) or set a final expiry date (End of Evaluation) to tomorrow. <u>Create a CD</u> [39], start the Multimedia Player today and start it tomorrow.
73

🔮 Multimedia Protector - flash-demo	Multimedia Protector - flash-demo [C:\Program Files\1.3\demodata\flash-demo.mme]			
Licence Infor	mation			
Type of licence per				
Benutzer Computer				
Gleichzeitige Benutzer				
Number of Computers	1			
Evaluation Time				
Number of days to evaluate	15			
End of Evaluation		Clear Expiration Date		
No evaluation version - Serial Num				
Licence Options				
Time limited version after Activation	n			
Runtime - number of days	0			
Runtime - Expiry Date		Clear Expiration Date		
Advanced Protection				
No Activation (content protection	only)			
Settings	Image	Player Options	Administration	
Licence Information	Data Import	Save	0	

Screen - Licence Information

See also

How to make a time limited evaluation / trial license? [238] How to prolong an evaluation / trial version? [239]

3.6.11.3 Licence Options

3.6.11.3.1 Time limited version after activation

If you need a **time-limited full version** (full version = version which is activated), check: *Time limited version after Activation*. Limitation is possible either

- by x days after the activation is done or
- by a specified expiry date

Use one of the following options.

• *Limit by number of days.* Specify the number of days the version should run after activation is done - e.g. 10 days

• *Limit by expiry date*. Specify an expiry date which will stop the application at this date after activation is done

Multimedia Protector - flash-demo	[C:\Program Files\1.3\demodata\flash-demo.mme]	00
Licence Infor	mation	
Licence mor	mation	
Type of licence per		
Benutzer Computer		
Gleichzeitige Benutzer		
Number of Computers	1	
-		
Evaluation Time Number of days to evaluate	15	
End of Evaluation	Clear Expiration Date	
No evaluation version - Serial Nur	nber needed to start	
Check for system date modification	n	
Licence Options		
Time limited version after Activati	on	
💽 Runtime - number of days	0	
🔘 Runtime - Expiry Date	Clear Expiration Date]
-	Clear Expiration Date)
Advanced Protection)
-)
Advanced Protection)
Advanced Protection)
Advanced Protection No Activation (content protection	i only))
Advanced Protection		Administration

Screen - Licence Information

0 This time limitation is independent of the time limitation of the evaluation version $\boxed{71}$.

3.6.11.3.2 Advanced Protection

This switch enables an advanced protection of the Multimedia Player. The Multimedia Player can detect if the EXE file was modified or cracked.

This is a very good additional protection but it is bound to a specific version of the MMF file. If you always deliver the Multimedia Player together with the MMF file (see Distribute a Project), it will work. If you allow downloading the Multimedia Player in combination with multiple different MMF files, it will not work.

Always use this option if you deliver Multimedia Player and MMF file together.

75

🧕 Multimedia Protector - flash-demo	[C:\Program Files\1.3\demodata	\flash-demo.mme]	00
Licence Infor	mation		
Type of licence per			
Benutzer Computer			
Gleichzeitige Benutzer			
Number of Computers	1		
Evaluation Time			
Number of days to evaluate	15		
End of Evaluation	•	Clear Expiration Date	
No evaluation version - Serial Nur	nber needed to start		
Check for system date modification			
Licence Options			
Time limited version after Activati			
Runtime - number of days	0		
Runtime - Expiry Date	•	Clear Expiration Date	
Advanced Protection			
No Activation (content protection	only)		
Settings	Image	Player Options	Administration
Licence Information	Data Import	Save	0

Screen - Licence Information

3.6.11.3.3 Content Protection Only

If only the <u>content</u> [30] is to be protected and no screen with <u>licensing</u> [23], <u>time limitation</u> [24] or <u>copy protection</u> [22] is to appear, select the option **No activation (content protection only)**.

b For network installations, the <u>number of users / PCs</u> has to be set to 99999 if no limitation is required.

Tip: For testing a project check - No Activation - this allows testing without the need to browse through the activation dialogs.

1 If you need a version just with content protection, which runs for an unlimited time, select:

- Number of Days = 0
- No activation (content protection only)

Type of licence per					
Benutzer					
Computer Gleichzeitige Benutzer					
Number of Computers	1				
Evaluation Time					
Number of days to evalu	ite 15	j 🚔			
End of Evaluation		· · · ·	Clear Expiration Date		
Check for system da	e modification				
Time limited version a	fter Activation				
💽 Runtime - number	of days	0	▲ ▼		
🔵 Runtime - Expiry D	ate		 Clear Expiration 	Date	
Advanced Protection					
No Activation (conte	t protection only)				

Screen - Licence Information

3.6.12 Screen - Image

Define the images to be used in your project.

🧟 Multimedia Protector - flash-de	mo [C:\Programme\1.3\dem	odata\flash-demo.mme]	0	0
Image				
			Splash-Image	
www.mirage-eystems.de			Delete Load it	
			Registration Image	
			Delete Load it	
Settings	Image	Player Options	Administration	5
Licence Information	Data Import	Save		3

3.6.12.1 Splash Image

You can define a splash image to be displayed during the program start of the Multimedia Player.

Click on the button *Splash Image* to display the selected image. Click on the button *Load It* to select an image. Click on the button *Delete* to delete the image.

Only JPG images are supported.



Screen - Image

3.6.12.2 Registration Image

You can define an image to be displayed during the registration process.

Click on the button *Registration Image* to display the selected image. Click on the button *Load It* to select an image. Click on the button *Delete* to delete the image.

() Only JPG images are supported. The ideal image size is 175x110 pixel.

79



3.6.13 Screen - Data Import

Import your data / content which is to be secured into the encrypted data file.

Data Import Enter the path of the folder or click on Select Data Folder C:\Programme\LICENCE PROTECTOR Multil Read Files from Folder Define as s Select Data Folder Refresh Selected Files Define How to protect? Word Documents ok PDF Files ok ok Images / Photos ok ok Videos audio / Music ok How to use a menu? ok ok Advanced Menu Basic Menu ok Basic Menu Use advanced menu ok	0
Media File Define as s Select Data Folder Refresh Selected Files Define as s ow to protect? business08.swf cdpresentation.swf cdresentation.swf content.swf chandcuff.jpg kandcuff.jpg kandcuff.jpg	
Media File State Image: Joint Documents ok ODF Files Image: Joint Documents ok DF Files Image: Joint Documents ok PT Files Image: Joint Documents ok Image: J Photos Image: J Photos ok	ting file
ow to protect?	
ow to protect?	
Auriced Menu acdpresentation.swf ok Oct Documents content.swf ok DEF Files b handcuff.jpg ok PT Files introinitial.swf ok mages / Photos b pcoversize.jpg ok ideos money.jpg ok udio / Music money.jpg ok ow to use a menu? ok ok	
tord Documents content.swf content.swf	
2E Files Concention ok 2E Files introinitial.swf ok ages / Photos introinitial.swf ok ages / Photos introinitial.swf ok deos man_jump.jpg ok udio / Music music_006.swf ok p c_activation.jpg ok ow to use a menu? ok	
PT Files introinitial.swf ok ipcoversize.jpg ok mages / Photos money.jpg ok money.jpg ok music_006.swf ok pc_activation.jpg ok pinv015.swf ok ok pinv015.swf ok <liok< li=""></liok<>	
Incodes Ipcoversize.jpg ok nages / Photos Ipcoversize.jpg ok Images / Photos Images / Photos ok Images / Photos Images / Pho	
mages / Photos man_jump.jpg ok money.jpg ok money.jpg ok music_006.swf ok pc_activation.jpg ok pinv015.swf ok ok pinv015.swf ok pinv015.swf ok <liok< li=""> <</liok<>	
deos money.jpg ok music_006.swf ok pc_activation.jpg ok ow to use a menu? dvanced Menu asic Menu	
udio / Music music_006.swf ok pc_activation.jpg ok pinv015.swf ok	
ow to use a menu? dvanced Menu asic Menu	
advanced Menu Iasic Menu	
asic Menu	
Use advanced menu	
_	
Settings Image Player Options	Administration
Licence Information Data Import Save	

3.6.13.1 About Data Import

All your <u>media files</u> are imported and stored in a single, encrypted database file (MME, MMF) - for details see chapter <u>The Basics</u> 2° .

You can select files to import from **one folder and all its subfolders**. The start file has to be a $.\underline{SWF}_{176}$, $.\underline{FLV}_{176}$ or $.\underline{EXE}_{165}$ file. This file can address any other file types like video or audio which are supported within flash. All selected files are imported into the project file and are stored in an encrypted format.

To make a file the start file of the project, select the file and press the button $\frac{\text{Define as}}{\text{starting file}^{123}}$.

What is a start file?

The start file is the file that is opened first from the Multimedia Player. It can be a <u>menu</u> which offers to start other files or any flash file.

80

Data File

All your media files are imported in **one single data file** and stored in an encrypted format (MME). If you make changes on the original files, you have to reimport the files.



3.6.13.2 Import Files

Press the button: **Select Data Folder** and select a folder with the files you want to use for your Multimedia Project. All files from the **folder and its subfolders** are imported automatically. It is not possible to import files in different folders.

Now select a <u>Start file</u> a_0 press the button: **Define as starting file**. The file is indicated with a red icon. This file is the file that is played after the start of the Multimedia Player and must be a <u>SWF</u> 176 (flash), <u>FLV</u> 176 (video) or <u>EXE</u> 165 (executable) file.

You can delete files by selecting one ore more files and press the button: Delete

The files are only deleted in the encrypted data file. The original files on the file system are never deleted.

If you have new files on the file system, press the button: *Read files from Folder* to import all files again.

If the files on the files systems have been modified, **select these files** and press the button: *Refresh Selected Files* to synchronize the files between the folder and the data file.

Modifying a file, adding a file or deleting a file on the file system does not affect the imported data in the encrypted data file. You have to Refresh the data, Read all files again or Delete the files manually in the data file by pressing the corresponding buttons.

Data Impo	ort			
Enter the path of the folder or c				_
C:\Programme\LICENCE PROTE	CTOR Multii	Read Files from Folder	Define as starting file	J
Select Data Folder		Refresh Selected Files	Delete)
	Media File		State	
How to protect?	🛷 business08.swf		ok	
Word Documents	cdpresentation.swf		ok	
	Content.swf		ok ok	
PDF Files	handcuff.jpg introinitial.swf		ok	
PPT Files	Incroinicial.swi Ipcoversize.jpg		ok	
Images / Photos	man_jump.jpg		ok	
Videos	Implement with the second seco		ok	
Audio / Music	Interstation with the second s		ok	
	pc_activation.jpg		ok	
How to use a menu?	pinv015.swf		ok	
Advanced Menu				
Basic Menu				
	🔲 Use advanced menu			

Screen - Import

3.6.14 Screen - Player Options

Define runtime options and language for the Multimedia Player 21.

ultimedia Protector -	flash-demo [C:\Program Files\	1.3\demodata\flash-dem	o.mme]	
Display Options	ptions			
Start with maximised si	ze 🗸 🗸	Width in Pixels Height in Pixels	870 •	
Enable Flash Config	uration (right mouse click)	-	Y	
Show Control Bar	none 🔻			
Language	Deutsch Español Français Italiano Nederlands Português do Brasil Português europeu Svenska Norsk Norsk Oansk Comdu			
Default Language	English 💌			
Conversion Options Converting hyperlin Always use relative Run in installation di				
Settings	Image		Player Options	Administration
-	\leq $=$	\equiv		Administration
Licence Information	Data Impo	ort	Save	

3.6.14.1 Display Options

Define options for the Multimedia Player during runtime.

Display Options

There are different options to start the Multimedia Player.

Run with Full Screen

This option starts the Multimedia Player in full screen mode.

Otherwise the Multimedia Player uses the screen size defined in the start .swf file.

<u>Start with maximized size</u> This option is similar to *Run with full screen*. It starts with the maximum usable size, while a title bar to close the Multimedia Player stays at the top of the screen.

Start with default size

The Multimedia Player uses the screen size defined in the start .swf file.

Start with customized size

You can define the width and

height of the screen in pixel.

Enable Flash configuration (right mouse click)

This enables the user to use **right mouse click** within the Multimedia Player and then print the **current** page or modify flash settings.

Show Control Bar

Activates a control bar with a Home button. This allows the user to start the main file (<u>Start file</u>) at any time again. Use this feature if you have multiple flash files connected with hyperlinks and the flash files does not provide a home or any other navigation feature. Select *none* if no control bar should be displayed.



Home button - activates the Start file

The control-bar can be placed:

- left
- bottom
- right
- top

Select Language

Select one or multiple languages for the registration and activation dialogs. The user can select the language within the first registration dialog [128].

Default Language

You can define a default language which is used for the first program start.

87

layer O	P			
Display Options				
Start with maximised s	ize 🔻	Width in Pixels	870	
Enable Flash Config	guration (right mouse click)	Height in Pixels	640	
Show Control Bar	none 💌			
Language	Deutsch Español Français Italiano Português do Brasil Português europeu Svenska Norsk Norsk Donsk Consk			
Default Language	English 💌			
Conversion Options Converting hyperlin Always use relative Run in installation d	ks after SWF ending paths			
Settings	Image		Player Options	Administration

Screen - Player Options

3.6.14.2 Converting Options

These options allow to automatically make corrections for files which would normally not run in the standard flash player.

Converting hyperlinks after SWF ending

If documents like <u>PDF</u>[183] or <u>PPT</u>[186] are converted and they have links to other PDF or PPT files, Multimedia Player can automatically convert the hyperlinks to .swf extension.

Sample

Original files: file1.pdf and file2.pdf. File1.pdf links to file2.pdf Converted files: file1.swf and file2.swf. File1.swf links to file2.pdf. This link would not work and is automatically corrected to file2.swf

Use this option only if needed. Hyperlinks e.g. using a xml configuration file will not work because they are also converted.

Always use relative paths

If documents like Word link to other documents in subfolders with these documents linking back, it is often necessary to use a relative path to link back like ...\file1.doc (instead of .\folder1\file1.doc).

Sample

c:\program files\folder1\file1.doc \rightarrow links to .\subfolder1\file2.doc c:\program files\folder1\subfolder1\file2.doc \rightarrow links to ...\file1.doc instead using .\folder1 \file1.doc

Using the option Always use relative path will support this kind of hyperlinks.

If the application loads but the configuration text provided via an XML file is missing, try again using the Option Always use relative path.

Run in installation directory

This options can be used if $\underline{\mathsf{EXE}}$ files are started. The Multimedia Player provides the path where the encrypted database is stored as the path where the EXE file is started. This option can be used if the EXE file has problems with configuration files.

Multimedia Protector -	flash-demo [C:\Program Files\1	3\demodata\flash-dem	no.mme]	0 (
Player O	ptions			
Start with maximised s	ize 💌	Width in Pixels Height in Pixels	870 ×	
📃 Enable Flash Config	guration (right mouse click)	Height in Pixels		
Show Control Bar	none			
Language	♥ Deutsch ♥ English ♥ Español ♥ Français ♥ Italiano ♥ Português do Brasil ♥ Português europeu ♥ Norsk ♥ Dansk ♥ Dansk			
Default Language	English 🔻			
Conversion Options Converting hyperlin Always use relative Run in installation d	ks after SWF ending paths			
Settings	Image		Player Options	Administration
Licence Information	Data Impor		Save	
Licence information				

Screen - Player Options

3.6.15 Screen - Save

Save your project and create the files for deployment.

You can either create multiple files, which are used for <u>CD Distribution</u> or one ZIP file, which includes all the files in a compressed format. The ZIP file can be used for distribution with a download link.



3.6.15.1 Create CD / Save

After all necessary settings have been made, the files to deploy included in the encrypted data file can be created. Press the button: *Distribute / Save for CD.* Depending of the size of the imported files this can take seconds to minutes.

If you want to provide the files via download, press <u>Save as ZIP file</u> to get one single file.

A new folder ...\projectname**Deploy** with all necessary files is generated. For details see chapter <u>The Basics about Distributing a file</u> 160. You can just click on <u>View Deploy Folder</u> 94 to open this folder.

After the files have been successfully generated, a <u>Testdrive</u> a^2 can be made.

You can add an $\underline{installer}$ which allows installing the files from CD to the hard disk drive.

<u>Note</u>

- To save a file just press Distribute / Save for CD. Make sure that no file you want to <u>import</u> b) is opened by another application.
- If you added or modified files within the <u>Screen Import</u>, all files will be imported and encrypted again, which can take some times. Changing all other settings will just update this information, which is quite fast.
- You have to import at least one swf, flv or exe file and mark it as a start file before you can save the project.



Screen - Save

See also Distribute a CD / DVD 163 Create ZIP file 91 Adding an installer 97

3.6.15.2 Create ZIP file / Save

After all necessary settings have been made, the files to deploy included in the encrypted data file can be created. Press the button: *Distribute / Save as ZIP.* Depending of the size of the imported files this can take seconds to minutes. As a result, all files are packed into one single ZIP file.

If you want to provide the files via CD, press Save for CD 89.

A new folder ...\projectname**Deploy** with all necessary files is generated. For details see chapter The Basics about Distributing a file 160.

As the files are ZIP, you can not test it. If you need a test, select Save for CD affirst.

You can add an <u>installer</u> which allows installing the files from CD to the hard disk drive.

<u>Note</u>

- To save a file just press Distribute / Save as ZIP. Make sure that no file you want to import application.
- If you added or modified files within the <u>Screen Import</u>, all files will be imported and encrypted again, which can take some times. Changing all other settings will just update this information, which is quite fast.
- You have to import at least one swf, flv or exe file and mark it as a start file before you can save the project.

😨 Multimedia Protector - flash-d	emo [C:\Programme\1.3\dei	modata\flash-demo.mme]	00
Save	fr	Distribute / Save or CD as zip Incel without saving Project	
Settings	Image	Player Options	Administration
Licence Information	Data Import	Save	0
	Scr	reen - Save	

Screen - Save

See also Create files for CD 89 Adding an installer 97

3.6.15.3 Cancel without Saving Project

Selecting this option will cancel the project without saving anything. To save the project data, select Distribute / Save 89.

3.6.15.4 Test Project

After creating the files for deployment you can test your project (Testdrive). The Testdrive simulates the deployment. It is only available if you selected the option Save for CD 89

O You cannot start the Multimedia Player on this folder, because the license file at is modified with each start and cannot be used any longer for distribution.

3



If you want to make a life test, copy the complete $\underline{Deploy folder}_{94}$ to another directory.

3.6.15.5 View Deploy Folder

You can directly view all files and then <u>copy the files to a CD</u> for testing on your hard disk. Just click on the option *View Deploy Folder*. It opens the file explorer.



3.6.15.6 Upload files to Activation Server

If you use the Web Activation Server, the project definition files have to be uploaded to the server. This upload is needed **only once** after you generated the project or when you change Web Activation Server settings 103.

This option is only available if:

- The login data to the Activation Server is configured see screen Administration, <u>Web</u> <u>Activation Server Administration</u>
- The <u>Premium</u> 56 version is installed
- Online Activation is selected in the screen Settings 63

All **configuration files** are uploaded to the Web Activation Server to allow instant Online Activation of the product.

95



See also

Online Activation - Step by Step 325 Error during uploading files 95

3.6.15.6.1 Error during uploading files

If an error occurs during uploading of the files, check:

- Are all login data configured? Check your password see screen Administration, <u>Web</u> Activation Server Administration
- Is Online Activation selected in the screen Settings 3?
- Do you have a Firewall installed? Disable firewall and try again.
- Is the Premium 56 installed?

If the upload still generates an error, upload the files manually - see chapter Manually Upload Files.

3.6.15.6.2 Manually upload Files

If the <u>automatic upload</u> is not working (probably because firewall limitations) you can manually upload your files to the Web Activation Server.

You have to copy your files to the Web Activation Server with an FTP software or within the file explorer.

Open your file explorer and type in the domain of the Web Activation Server

ftp://registerserver.net

You then have to provide the your username and password, which you got with the confirmation e-mail.

To log on to a secure FTP site in Internet Explorer 5.x and 6:

- 1. Type <u>ftp://registerserver.net</u> in your Internet Explorer, click **File**, and then click **Login** As
- 2. In the User Name (Hosting-Number) box, type your user name, and then press TAB
- 3. Type your **password (Hosting-Password)** in the Password box, and then press Login

After login you will see a directory structure similar to this one:

퉬 alg	
퉬 bin	
🌗 db	
퉬 export	
퉬 languages	
퉬 logs	
퉬 pagecontent	
퉬 pconfig	
퉬 reports	

Select the folder .. alg and copy to this directory:

• All files from the folder ..\projectname\config\Web Activation Server\alg

Select the folder ... \pconfig and copy to this directory:

• All files from the folder ... \projectname \config \Web Activation Server \pconfig

3.6.15.7 Adding an Installer

The <u>Premium</u> $|_{56}$ version comes with a ready to go installation manager. It allows installing the files from CD or download link to the hard disk. It also offers a network installation for Client PC's. The installer files can be found on the folder \Multimedia Protector Premium 2.0 installer.

The installation manager includes the following features:

- · Copies all files to a specified directory
- Adds the necessary user rights to the specified directory
- Copies the player, database mmf file and the license file to the specified directory, including an icon file
- Adds a program manager group and an entry within the program manager group to start the Multimedia Player
- Adds uninstall information
- Installation dialogs are available in multiple languages

• You can change the icon on the desktop and in the program manager group with an own bespoke icon.

The installer consists of 2 files:

- setup.exe (installer file for single user installation) or setup-network.exe (for network installation)
- setup.ini (configuration file for installer)

Copy these 2 files from the main installation folder ...\Multimedia Protector Premium (2.0) **installer** to the deploy folder of your project. Then modify the <u>setup.ini file</u> with any editor. The name of the installer can be renamed, e.g. to setup-abc.exe. The name of the ini file must be setup.ini.

If you want to start the installer directly after a CD is inserted, modify the file autorun. inf.

[autorun] icon=flash-demo.exe open=**setup.exe** Name=Multimedia Protector - Flash Demo

 \bigcirc This feature is available only in the Multimedia Protector Premium $|_{56}$ version.

See also

Configuration File - Setup.ini 262 Single User Installation 264 Network Installation 268

3.6.16 Screen - Administration

Supports administration tasks like creating keys (Serial Number, Unlock Key, Licence Keys) or access to administrations issues like checking for the latest update, Web Activation Server administration interface and version information.

	00
Administration	
Serial Number Unlocking with Copy Prot. Unlocking without Copy Prot. Additional Licences	6
Additional days after applying Serial Number Number of desired Serial Numbers 1 Image: Comparison of the series o	Keys Misc
Save generated keys to file	
Settings Image Player Options Administration Licence Information Data Import Save	0

3.6.16.1 About Administration

The administration screen bundles a lot of administration activities like

- Create a <u>Serial Number Key</u>
- Create <u>Unlock Key</u>
- Change Copy Protection
- Access <u>Web Administration Interface</u>
- <u>Repair and Compress</u> Depair project file

- Activate Error log 107
- Display own license 108 for Multimedia Protector
- Test for available updates 101

You can switch between the 2 main areas creating keys and miscellaneous administration functions with the TAB on the right side of the screen.

🧕 Multimedia Protector - flash-demo	[C:\Program Files\1.3\Demoda	ta\flash-demo.mme]		00
Administratio	ot. Unlocking without Copy Prot.	Additional Licences Number of d	esired Serial Num	Keys Misc
use extended description		6	Save generated keys to file	
Settings	Image	Player Options	Administrati	on
Licence Information	Data Import	Save		0

3.6.16.2 Miscellaneous Administration Functions

The Miscellaneous TAB provides access to administration tasks like license information, checking for updates, repairing the database and using the <u>Web Activation Server</u> Administration interface **326**.

About Multimedia Protector	Check for Update	<u>s</u>		
Repair and Compress	Project file			
Web Activation Server Admin	nistration		Chang	e URL
			🗍 I use an own Activatio	on Server
Hosting Number	1381806		FTP-Server address	
Hosting Password	*******		FTP Account	
			FTP Password	****
			Path on FTP-Server	
Primary Hardware ID (Install		me(local)(4) 🔻		
Alternative Hardware ID (Ins	tallation Code) MAC Addre	ess(2) 🔻		
Display Quick Introduction	n help			
Frror Tracking Enabled				
Select path for Log-files				

See also

100

Multimedia Protector

Activation Server Configuration 103 Activation Server for Testing 326 Check for Updates 101 Display Welcome Screen 106 3.6.16.2.1 About Multimedia Protector - Version information

Displays a screen with the version information (Version number and date) and copyright information. You need the version number to <u>check for updates</u> 101.

Multimedia Protector - flash-de	mo [C:\Progr	am Files\2.0\demodata\fl	ash-de	mo.mme]			0
Administrati	on						
About Multimedia Protector	Ch	eck for Updates					Keys
Repair and Compress Proj	ect file)					Misc
							_
Web Activation Server Administra	ition			Chang	e URL		
				🔲 I use an own Activatio	n Server		
Hosting Number 1	381806			FTP-Server address			
Hosting Password	*******			FTP Account			
				FTP Password	****		
				Path on FTP-Server			
Primary Hardware ID (Installation	Code)	Netbios Name(local)(4)	-				
Alternative Hardware ID (Installat	tion Code)	MAC Address(2)	•				
Display Quick Introduction hel	p						
Error Tracking Enabled							
Select path for Log-files							
Show License Information							
Settings		Image		Player Options		Administra	tion
License Information		Data Import		Save			

3.6.16.2.2 Check for Updates

This link opens the screen to configure the scheduler for updates. You can select one of the following options:

- Daily
- Weekly (recommended)
- Monthly
- Never



The update check is done in the background and informs you if an update is available. It downloads the update and installs it automatically. This is the recommended way to install updates.

If you manually want to check for an update, the update check can also be started from

your **program manager group**, *Multimedia Protector*, *Check for updates*. The check is **instantly** done.

You can also check for updates on the website - <u>click here for a manual check</u>. Only updates for main releases (not Service Packs) can be downloaded here.

To compare the latest update with the installed version, retrieve the version number with the <u>About Multimedia Edition [101]</u> link.

To install an update, you need a valid update subscription. Check your license information with <u>Show Licence Information</u> 108.

The update check is also available in the Welcome Screen 52.

3.6.16.2.3 Repair and Compress Project File

If the database is corrupted, you can repair and also compress the database with the button *Repair and Compress Project file.*

We recommend using this function from time to time to compress the database, as it will grow with every rebuilt.

3.6.16.2.4 Web Activation Server

If you are using the <u>Web Activation Server</u>, 324 you can access the administration interface directly with the link *Web Activation Server Administration*.

To configure the link to the server, press the button *Change URL* and type in the URL to the Webserver, e.g. https://www.registerserver.net/hostingnumber/lpweb

Activation Server - Hosting Service

Type in your **Hosting Number** and **Hosting password** as well. This is necessary before you <u>upload the configuration files</u> to the Web Activation Server.

🧕 Multimedia Protector - flash-den	no [C:\Program Files\	2.0\demodata\flasł	n-demo.mme]		0 🖯
Administrati	on				
About Multimedia Protector	Check for Up	dates			Keys
Repair and Compress Proje	ect file				Misc
Web Activation Server Administrat	lion			Change URL	
			🗌 I use an ow	n Activation Server	
Hosting Number 13	81806		FTP-Server add	dress	
Hosting Password **	*******		FTP Account		
			FTP Password	****	
			Path on FTP-Se	rver	
Primary Hardware ID (Installation (Code) Netbio	os Name(local)(4)	•		
Alternative Hardware ID (Installation	on Code) MAC	Address(2)	•		
Display Quick Introduction help					
Error Tracking Enabled					
Select path for Log-files					
Show License Information					
Settings	Imag	e)	Player Optio	ons	Administration
License Information	Data Im	port	Save		0

Configure Activation Server

Running an own Activation Server

If you run the Web Activation Server on your own machine, you can also use the automatic <u>uploading of the configuration files</u> 34. This requires a special configuration of the server. If the configuration is not possible, you can always <u>manually upload the</u>

configuration files 96.

Configuration for automatic upload

For an automatic upload of your Multimedia Protector configuration files to the Web Activation Server y access. Install an FTP-Server with access on FTP-port 21. Provide a FTP-account which has **full reac** Activation Server installation including all subfolders (like ..\bin, \alg).

Now configure the FTP account in the Multimedia Protector Generator.

- FTP-Server address: name of the FTP Server like registerserver.net
- FTP Account: FTP account user name
- FTP Password: password always use a password with this FTP account
- PATH on FTP Server path to the Web Activation Server server directory, relative to the home direct

Example: Installation is on c:\wwwroot\lpweb. The FTP user's home directory is c:\ . The PATH on F 'wwwroot\lpweb'. If the FTP user's home directory is 'c:\wwwroot\lpweb' then the path can be left bla

🧕 Multimedia Protector - flash-demo [C:	\Program Files\2.0\demodata\flash-(demo.mme]	
Administration	l		
About Multimedia Protector	Check for Updates		
Repair and Compress Project file			
Web Activation Server Administration		Chang	je URL
		I use an own Activation	on Server
Hosting Number		FTP-Server address	registerserver
Hosting Password		FTP Account	9999999
		FTP Password	*********
		Path on FTP-Server	lpweb
Primary Hardware ID (Installation Code)	Netbios Name(local)(4)]	
Alternative Hardware ID (Installation Cod	de) MAC Address(2) 💌]	
Display Quick Introduction help			
Error Tracking Enabled			
Select path for Log-files			
Show License Information			
Settings	Image	Player Options	
License Information	Data Import	Save	$\overline{)}$

Primary / Alternative Harware ID

The primary <u>hardware ID</u> is used as the main criteria to activate copy protection. Only if this criteria is not retrievable the Alternative Hardware ID is used.

For **single user** installations or CD distribution, the hardware ID 4 (<u>NetBIOS Name</u> 157) is recommended. For network installations use installation code 5 (<u>Volume ID + UNC Path</u>

158) or 6 (<u>MAC Address + UNC Path</u> 158).

Theses values are automatically assigned to each new project.

1 This option is only available in the Premium version. You also need a valid hosting account. Order Hosting.

See also

Online Activation - Step by Step 325 Activation Server for Testing 326

3.6.16.2.5 Display quick introduction help / Welcome Screen

The option *Display quick introduction help when starting* allows to enable or disable the <u>Welcome Screen</u> 52 at startup.

🧟 Multimedia Protector		θ
welcome	info	ormation
Thank you very much for using the Multimedia Protector, wh files. Enjoy the multimedia experience!	ich is the most powerful ar	nd safest tool for protecting your
And go!	Check for updates	:
Quick Introduction	Your version is 1.3.0.24	5
Which files can be protected?		
How to create a bootable CD / DVD	Online check for update	<u>s</u>
How to convert Word files		
How to convert PDF files		
How to convert PPT files		
How to create a time-limited licence		
How to distribute a network version		
How to activate Multimedia Protector		
If you have any questions which are not answered by this		
tutorial, search in the Online Knowledge Base	www.Multimedia-I	Protector.com
Do not display this Quick Introduction help anymore whe	n starting	

3.6.16.2.6 Enable Error Tracking

In case there is an error within the Project Generator, Mirage support may advise you to turn on an error log. Select *Error Tracking Enabled* and select a folder to save the log files with *Select Path for Log files*.



(Do not forget to deselect this option after the problem has been solved.

3.6.16.2.7 Show License Information

This opens the Licence Viewer to display your license for Multimedia Protector.

Additional details about your Licence, Demoversion and Licence Agreement can be found in the chapter <u>Your Multimedia</u> Protector Licence 234.

To apply an Activation Key(like key for update subscription) see Apply Activation Key^[234].

🖺 License Viewer	
Manufacturer: Mirage Computer Systems GmbH	1
Company: Test Version 2.0 Premium	
😟 🕂 🧑 Installation Codes - Copy protection activated (4)	
🚊 🖓 Modules	
📮 👩 Multimedia Protector Premium (Number of licenses per Computer: 1 (thereof 0 are available), Activation (done))	
🛱 🙀 Activation Keys	
Sr99m-06PC1-9283g-FWEEM-wi47N-9m7Ik	
🔋 👽 Update Subscription (available, License is valid until: 28.03.2008)	
Release (2000)	
E System	
Deactivate Activation Key Refresh Info	Close
3.6.17 Creating Serial Numbers and Keys

To switch to the key generation mode, select the TAB Keys on the right side.

🧕 Multimedia Protector - flash-demo	[C:\Program Files\1.3\Demoda	ta\flash-demo.mme]		00
Administratio	t. Unlocking without Copy Prot.	Additional Licences Number	of desired Serial Num	nd .
use extended description			Save generated keys to file	¥
Settings	Image	Player Options	Admi	inistration
Licence Information	Data Import	Save		0

3.6.17.1 Format of a Key

All keys used by Multimedia Protector are unique and have the same format.

dO8uc-G1iC9-jOGeA-BqgEX-U71ID-0V1VX

There are 6 blocks each with 5 characters. The blocks are separated by a hyphen for better readability.

The option **Use extended description** adds additional information information to clarify letters which could be misinterpreted (like I and 1 or O and 0). This is only necessary when transmitting a key by fax. The extended description is only available if you make one single key.

Example: dO8uc-G1iC9-jOGeA-BqgEX-U71ID-0V1VX In block 1 at position 2 there is the capital letter O In block 3 at position 2 there is the capital letter O In block 5 at position 4 there is the small letter I In block 6 at position 1 there is the digit 0

O All keys are project-specific. You have to load the project before you create the keys. It is not possible to create a Serial Number for project A when project B is loaded.

3.6.17.2 Create Serial Number Key

After having bought the product, the customer is provided with a Serial Number which is the 'proof of purchase' and is unique. To get a better idea of the workflow, see <u>Basics</u> <u>about Workflow</u> [316].

The design of a key is described in Format of a Key 109.

There are different ways to create a Serial Number

- <u>Create one single Serial Number</u>
- Create a Key List 112
- Dynamically create a Serial Number within an Online Shop 207

3.6.17.2.1 Create one single Serial Number

To manually create a Serial Number switch to the Administration Screen 98.

A Serial Number can be created with different options.

Allow additional days after applying Serial Number

If activation by e-mail, fax or phone is used, there is a time difference between applying the Serial Number key and sending the <u>Unlock Key</u> [322]. To allow the customer to use the Multimedia Player after applying the Serial Number, add a few days (typically 2-5 days) which are included in the Serial Number.

Number of users

If a <u>network license</u> and is used (more then 1 license per PC / user / concurrent user), the number of PCs / users / concurrent users can coded in the Serial Number. If the user buys later more licenses, send him and <u>Additional Key</u> .

This value **overwrites** the existing value in the license file. If you have an evaluation version with 5 users and the Serial Number includes 1 user, this results in a license for one user after applying the Serial Number.

For a single user installation always set this value to 1.

Number of desired Serial Numbers

Either generate one key per customer or generate a complete key list with hundreds of keys. For details see Create a Key List. [112]

Create and Save Key

After pressing the button *Generate Key*, the key(s) including the extended description is/ are copied into the text box. If only one key is generated, it is also copied into the **clipboard**.

The content of the text box can be saved to a file with the button Save generated keys to file.

🧕 Multimedia Protector - flash-demo		0 0
Administratio	n	
Serial Number Unlocking with Copy Pro	ot. Unlocking without Copy Prot. Additional Licences	8
Additional days after applying Serial Nu	Mumber of desired Serial Numbers	Keys Misc
Number of Users		
1		
Generating 1 Serial Number(s) kK9P2-1E138-47792-EX9wZ-R1T8N-BZFD In block 2 at position 3 there is the capit In block 3 at position 3 there is the capit	al letter I	
use extended description	Save generate	ed keys to file
Settings		Administration
	Image Player Options	
Licence Information	Data Import Save	0

Special Workflow - use ONE Serial Number on MULTIPLE PCs

The recommended workflow is to make one Serial Number for one PC, so that each PC has its own Serial Number. It is possible to hand out one single Serial Number to a company and allow, that this **Serial Number can be used on multiple PCs**. This requires the Web Activation Server.

The necessary steps are:

- Create one Serial Number (Number of PCs = 1, Number of Desired Serial Numbers = 1)
- Add this Serial Number on the 2.0 server. In the Web Administration Interface, select Tools, **Add an Activation Entry**. It is important to select *Module Activation*. In the Field *Maximum Tries* you specify, how often the Serial Number can be used

112	Multimedia Pro	tector		
	Reports View	and Modify Tools		
	Select a Tool User Settings Manual Activation	Tools		
	Add an Activation Entry Import Manage Users Restart Webservice		on Key or EntryKey for a module. This is nece cial value for the specified Activation Key or i	
	Restart webservice	Upload a single Activation Key	or Module	Requir
		Project	flashdemo 👻	
		-	Module Activation -	
		Module ID:	FL1000 (Flash Demo) -	
	<	Entry Key:	UUFTy-332D0-98Ic0-8X97B-vflDO-5l2Ff	
		Is Locked:		
		Maximum Tries:		
		Check License Days:		
		External Group:		
		External ID:		
		Save	Cancel	

Add a Serial Number on the Activation Server

See also

Create a Key List 112

3.6.17.2.2 Create a Key List

If you have only a few installations to manage, it is sufficient to generate the Serial Number on a one-by-one basis manually. In case of a large volume delivery like hundreds of CD's, a key list is necessary. The key list file would then be sent to the CD duplication company. Online Shops that do not support an integrated generator often support the upload of a key list.

The key list file can be generated within the screen - Administration, TAB <u>Serial Number</u> 110. Enter the desired number of serials, press button *Generate Key* and then the button **Save Key output to file**. The key list is saved as a text file.

Sample: Generating 3 Serial Number(s)... RZ9UZ-I1CC9-9Ah7v-GZ97n-gd18N-a21Fa 6F9UA-I1CC9-9Ah7e-GZ97n-ld18N-a71FJ S79Uf-I1CC9-9Ah7a-GZ97n-Qd18N-ak1FP Key(s) generated.

1 The Key List can e.g. be sent to <u>e-commerce providers and be printed on the</u>

cover of the CD/DVD.

Multimedia Protector - flash-demo [C:\Prog	ram Files\1.3\Demodata\fl	ash-demo.mme]		00
Administration				
Serial Number Unlocking with Copy Prot. Unlo	cking without Copy Prot. Add	litional Licences		Keys
Additional days after applying Serial Number 3 Number of Users 2 4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	Generate Key		esired Serial Numbers	Misc
9Q9PM-1EIH8-47J97-EX9wZ-INT8N-BuFDE zq9PT-1EIH8-47J9e-EX9wZ-XNT8N-BvFDo ID9Pr-1EIH8-47J9L-EX9wZ-1NT8N-BXFD3	Textbox with all generated Serial Numbers. The content of the textbox can be saved to a file		Save Keylist to a file	× (
vse extended description			Save generated keys to fi	le
Settings	Image	Player Options	Ad	dministration
Licence Information	Data Import	Save		0

See also

Create one single Serial Number 110

3.6.17.3 Unlock Key

Generating an Unlock Key is only necessary if the customer registers via <u>e-mail</u>, 131 fax 132 or <u>phone</u> 133. It unlocks the version by activating the copy protection. To get a better idea of the workflow, see <u>Basics about Workflow</u> 316.

The Unlock Key is either generated

• With Copy Protection 116

or if the Web Activation Server is used

<u>Within the Web Administration Interface</u>

If copy protection is not necessary, select Unlocking without Copy Protection [117] Copy Protection [117]

instead.

Requesting Unlock Key by E-Mail, Fax or Phone

The customer fills out the screen for <u>E-Mail activation</u> or <u>Fax Activation</u> and sends to you an E-Mail or Fax with the activation request or calls you to activate by phone. You use the installation codes provided to generate an Unlock Key.

Senden K	onten 🕶 🌐 👻 🔛 🍇 😼 🕴 🕅	🕈 🛛 🖄 📄 O <u>p</u> tionen	+ HTML
🛄 An	registerflashdemo@mirage-systems.de		
🔛 Cc			
🔛 Bcc			
Betreff:	Activation-Request for Multimedia Edition - Fla	ash Demo.	
	🤅 🛃 🛛 🔏 🗈 隆 🗛 Arial	→ 10 →	<u>A</u> - F K <u>U</u>

Activation-Request for Multimedia Edition - Flash Demo (22.04.2006.22:29:05) Please do not change the following information Name/Company: Tom Hanks Serial Number: 678U0-31CC9-9AF7m-AZ87n-Dd18N-0Q1FH E-Mail-Address: Tom.Hanks@smartinc.com Instcodes: 01: 6F7B20C8 02: 72BCAD9C 03: BB80A2BD 04: BB80A2BD 05: 9F530D83 06: 2ACAFD2C 07: 2D818C98 08: 06B05ECB 09: BAA3248A

The unlock key will be sent within 1-2 business days. Project:flash-demo - MCR001 User Info: (here you can write comments to the Activation Center)

E-Mail Activation Request



Fax-Registration for Multimedia Edition - Flash Demo

Send this fax to +49 721/151599638

Name/Company: Tom Hanks

Serial Number: 678U0-31CC9-9AF7m-AZ87n-Dd18N-0Q1FH

In block 1 at position 5 there is the digit 0 In block 6 at position 1 there is the digit 0

E-Mail-Address: Tom.Hanks@smartinc.com

Instcodes: 01: 6F7B20C8 02: 72BCAD9C 03: BB80A2BD 04: BB80A2BD 05: 9F530D83 06: 2ACAFD2C 07: 2D818C98 08: 06B05ECB 09: BAA3248A

The unlock key will be sent within 1-2 business days. Project: flash-demo - MCR001

Fax Activation Request

Y Activation of Multimedia Edition	- Flash Demo 🔀
Licence Prime Constant Sofiante Const Pedicate and Liberts Occurs and Liberts Occurs	Request Unlock Key by Phone Please dial the number +49 700 54885342 to activate Multimedia Edition - Flash Demo. When asked you should tell your Serial Number 678U0-31CC9-9AF7m-AZ87n-Dd18N-0Q1FH and one of the following installation codes.
About Unlocking Enter all received keys to unlock the software.	No Installation Code 01 6F7B20C8 02 72BCAD9C 03 BB80A2BD 04 BB80A2BD 05 9F530D83 06 2ACAFD2C 07 2D818C98 08 06805ECB 09 BAA3248A
Show Licence Information	Back Next

Phone Activation Request

For details see workflow - Activation by E-Mail, Phone, Fax 322

3.6.17.3.1 Create Unlock Key with Copy Protection

Enter the Hardware ID which is transmitted from the customer and select the type of copy protection (Volume ID, MAC Address, Hostname etc.) you want to use. You have to enter only **one** hardware ID.

For **single user** installations or CD distribution, the hardware ID 4 (<u>NetBIOS Name</u> 157) is recommended. For network installations use installation code 5 (<u>Volume ID + UNC Path</u> 158) or 6 (<u>MAC Address + UNC Path</u> 158).

After pressing the button *Generate Key*, the key including the extended description is copied into the textbox. It is also copied into the clipboard. The content of the textbox can be saved to a file with the button *Save generated keys to file*.

헟 Multimedia Protector - flash-demo [C:\Program Files\1.3\Demodata\	flash-demo.mme]		00
Administratio	n			
Serial Number Unlocking with Copy Prot	Unlocking without Copy Prot. Ad	ditional Licences		Keys
Hardware ID (Installation Code)				ys (
72BCAD9C MAC Address(2)	Generate Key			Misc
				9
Key(s) to activate Copy Protection and u IC6tl-ECpE8-eLHQS-FbdRm-gNClJ-BsFTt	nlock application. Can be applied only o	on the computer with InstCode 72BC	AD9C at Protection Type 2.	
use extended description		(T	
			Save generated keys to file	
		(
Settings	Image	Player Options	Administration	
Licence Information	Data Import	Save		0

Send the Unlock Key to the customer who will use the key in the screen Enter Unlock Key 134.

If a hardware ID can not be retrieved (e.g. there is no network adapter) then the code is empty.

See also

The design of a key is described in Format of a Key 109 To better understand the Hardware ID see chapter Hardware ID 154.

3.6.17.3.2 Create Unlock Key without Copy Protection

The Unlock Key is only necessary, if <u>Web Activation</u> $\boxed{163}$ is not used. It unlocks the version by deleting the time limitation. To get a better idea of the workflow, see <u>Basics about</u> <u>Workflow</u> $\boxed{316}$.

If copy protection is to be used, select Unlocking with Copy Protection [116] instead.

After pressing the button Generate Key, the key including the extended description is

copied into the textbox. It is also copied into the clipboard. The content of the textbox can be saved to a file with the button *Save generated keys to file.*

🕑 If you have un checked -	Remove time limitati	on after	Unlock	Key is	s applied	73 you	will
get 2 keys. Both keys have	to be applied.					-	

💿 Multimedia Protector - flash-demo	[C:\Program Files\1.3\Demodat	ta\flash-den	io.mme]		00
Administratio			inces		Keys Misc
Key to unlock application without Copy P nJ6Px-1EIE8-47F9I-EXewZ-INC8N-B2FD	rotection. J				Ũ
			l	Save generated keys t	o file
Settings	Image		Player Options		Administration
Licence Information	Data Import		Save		0

Send the Unlock Key to the customer who will use the key in the screen Enter Unlock Key 134.

See also

The design of a key is described in Format of a Key 109 To better understand the Hardware ID see chapter Hardware ID 154.

3.6.17.3.3 Create Unlock Key using Web Activation Server

Using the Web Activation Server to create the Unlock Key ensures that the Serial Number cannot be used twice (e.g. customers sends the Serial Number key by fax and uses the key on another PC with Online activation).

Log into the Web Administration Interface and select Tools, *Manual Activation*.

Select your project and the main module ID. Use the Serial Number and installation code from the e-mail, fax or phone. After pressing the button *Send*, the data is stored and the Unlock Key is created.

Create Copy Protection und Uni	ock Keys	Required I
Type:	Module Activation	~
Customername:		
Projektname:	demo-easygo	~
Serial Number Key / EntryKey:	E8DEv-5CP93-9E4IO-3tK8X-LQD5k-6N14f	
Module ID:	QHD001	~
Installation Code:	6 C7DB7158	
OEM-Name:		
E-Mail:	peter.hanks@smartinc.com	
Send	Cancel	

3.6.17.4 Additional Licenses

Increase Network Licence

If a <u>network license</u> is used (more then 1 license per PC / user / concurrent user), the number of PCs / users / concurrent users can be increased or decreased by sending an Activation Key to the customer.

🔨 This feature is available only in Multimedia Protector <u>Premium</u> 🙃 version.

O This key **adds** the selected number of licenses to the existing value in the license file. If you have an existing license with 5 users and the additional license includes 2 users, this results in a license for 7 users after applying the key.

Prolong Evaluation Version

The second option is to prolong an existing trial period. Make an Activation Key with:

- additional licenses = 0
- either select: Number of days to evaluate or End of Evaluation

The design of a key is described in Format of a Key 109.

After pressing the button *Generate Key*, the key including the extended description is copied into the textbox. It is also copied into the clipboard. The content of the textbox can be saved to a file with the button *Save generated keys to file*.

Serial Number Unlocking with Copy Pr	rot. Unlocking without Copy Prot. Additiona	Licences	
Hardware ID (Installation Code)	Generate Key	Additional licences	
Online validation required		Number of days to evaluate of the second sec	ate
		End of Evaluation	Clear Expiration Date
Key to add 5 licences. Notice: Can be a	applied on all computers!		
Key to add 5 licences. Notice: Can be a Rd6Pr-1EIE8-47K9n-EXxwZ-jNC8N-BgF	pplied on all computers! D1		
Rd6Pr-1EIE8-47K9n-EXxwZ-jNC8N-BgF	pplied on all computers! D1		Save generated keys to file
Rd6Pr-1EIE8-47K9n-EXxwZ-jNC8N-BgF	applied on all computers! D1		Save generated keys to file
Rd6Pr-1EIE8-47K9n-EXxwZ-jNC8N-BgF	ipplied on all computers! D1		Save generated keys to file

To ensure that this Activation Key is not used many times, there are 2 options

With Web Activation Server

Online Validation Required

120

Multimedia Protector

Use this options, if you have a Web Activation Server. The Activation Key is sent to the Web Activation Server before it is applied. It is stored in the database. If the Web Activation Server detects that the key was already used, it will block the key.

Without Web Activation Server

You have to include the <u>Hardware ID</u> in the Activation Key. This ensures that the Activation Key can only be used on the machine with the specified Hardware ID.

3.6.17.5 USB Stick

This allows using a standard USB stick to copy protect a product. For details see $\underline{\text{USB}}$ Stick as a dongle replacement $\boxed{312}$

Click here how to add the protection on the USB stick

To deliver a USB stick with a ready to go license, there are only a few steps necessary.

Limit usage

The customer can use the license always **only on the computer, where the USB stick is attached**. The limitation by PC / user is an additional configuration setting to limit the usage.

- Use a license per <u>Computer/PC</u> this limits the usage to the defined number of computers (recommended option). To define an unlimited usage, just configure a license with 9999 computers
- Use a license per User by this limits the usage to the defined number of users (USB stick can be used only on one PC)

(1) A license per concurrent user is not supported with an USB stick.

Activate protection on USB stick

Select screen Administration, <u>Switch on Copy Protection on USB Stick</u> [121]. This opens a dialog, where you can select the license file on the USB stick. The copy protection is then activated.

If the USB stick does not support this option, an error message is displayed: *There is no valid instcode for file filename.lic* You have to use another USB stick.

Typical project settings

In combination with USB stick you would have typically these settings:

- Uncheck <u>No evaluation version Serial Number</u> 72 needed to start
- Check <u>No evaluation content protection only</u>

Automated process for large quantities

If you need large quantities of USB sticks with a license file already activated, you can use the service of the company OEM marketing - <u>www.oem.de.</u> They are specialized in CD and USB duplication and they have a special license from us to add the USB stick protection in a batch process. You have to send them your files from the folder Deploy.

▲()▼
le

See also

USB Stick - more details 312 Deliver the USB stick with Copy Protection already activated 313

3.6.18 Create a new Project

Multimedia Protector

122

3.6.18.1 Create a new Project

Select the option Create new Project in the start screen to create a new project.

1 You could also <u>copy an existing project</u> **125** with all settings.

0.0

123



Version 1.3.2.331 🕐

3.6.18.2 Project File Name

Name of new Project

Type in a project filename. It must not contain any special characters like . &%\$§", space or umlauts like öäü.

All the project definitions and all imported files are stored in **one single project file**. The extension is **.MME.** The project filename is used with the extension .mme for the project file.

Sample: Flash-Demo.MME

Select a path (project folder 124) to store the new project.

If you want to protect an EXE file use the name of the EXE file you want to protect as project filename.



3.6.18.3 The Project Folder

We recommend creating a folder per project. The project files are:

Project File .MME

This file contains all the data and definitions - see Project File Name 123

This file should be included in a backup. All subsequent files can be created from the project file.

Project Folders

After creating the files to <u>deploy</u> approject subfolder with the Project Filename is created. This subfolder includes additional folders.

Sample: ...\Flash-Demo **\Config** ...\Flash-Demo **\Deploy**

Folder Config

Holds a configuration file with the extension .XML. This file is only for internal use and should not be changed. The Config folder has subfolders with configuration information for the <u>Web Activation Server</u> ³²⁴ and <u>Shop Integration</u> ²⁰¹.

Folder Deploy

This folder holds all necessary files for distribution. For details see chapter Distribute the Project 160, 89

3.6.19 Copy a Project

You can copy an existing project with all settings. Select **Copy Project** in the start screen.

In the file dialog, select now the project you want to copy. You get now a new screen where you can type in a new project name and select a new folder.



Copy Options

The important option is: New project uses a different encryption.

This should be used, if you want to create a new project and the project should use different Serial Numbers.

Only if you plan to deliver multiple databases with one license, because you want to split the project, uncheck this option. For details see chapter: Split project into several databases and several databases and several s

126

Option: New Project uses different encryption

Checked: The new project gets a new license file and different Serial Numbers with a different encryption.

Unchecked: The new project can use the same license file and the same Serial Numbers like the original project



4 Part II - Enhanced Features

4.1 About Part II

4.2 Activation and Registration Screens

This chapter describes all relevant screens of the Multimedia Player during the licensing activation and activation for process.

Tutorial - Product Activation

This tutorial demonstrates, how the user activates the product - using Online, E-Mail, Fax or phone activation.

Start Video Tutorial for product Activation

4.2.1 Start Screen of the Multimedia Player

This is the initial screen which pops-up as long as the software has not been activated. It depends on the selected customization options.

The following configuration settings are possible:

- Product Name 59
- Link to Web Shop 59
- Registration Image 78
- <u>Activation Options</u> and Default Activation Option
- Number of days to evaluate 71
- <u>Available Activation Options</u>
- Link to Help 59

It allows either continuing unregistered or typing in the <u>Serial Number</u> 319. The version can be used x days for evaluation before the activation has to be done.

128



4.2.2 Online Activation

The Online Activation requires the Serial Number, company name and e-mail address. Then the license will be verified online and activated. No additional step will be required. Details of the workflow 321.

This activation option is defined in the screen - Settings 3.

130



The activation process is transparent for the customer.

Web Activation				
\square	A module has to be activated online.			
##	Please provide a connection to the internet and activate it.			
\square	Proxy settings			
	Activate now Cancel			

Web Activation

Activation in progress...





The screen: Activation Successful 135 is displayed

4.2.3 Activation by E-Mail

The E-Mail Activation requires the Serial Number, company name and e-mail address. After filling out the screen, an e-mail with the hardware IDs and license information will be generated. You have to send one key back to the customer to activate the copy protection (see screen Enter Unlock Key 134). Details of the workflow.

This activation option is defined in the screen - Settings 62

Activation of Multimedia Editio	n - Flash Demo 🔀
Licence Protector	Request Unlock Key by E-Mail Enter Serial Number @Www.sicct-warm-action.com/ tout.com/charge defaultance:
Serial Number If you don't have a valid Serial Number you can buy the software.	Enter Name/Company Ton Henks
Buy it Please enter all information that is requested in order to start the activation process.	Enter your E-Mail Address [Inn Jess dynamics con "You entered regression of freedow of the art to the Addisation Center, You will receive an E-Mail conservery offenencies to yourks the synthese:
	Request United New Inv E-Hall - gend E-Hall
Show Licence Information	Tax can also activate the antheran online Tax can also researd an unled due to 2 ma Tax can also researd an unled live to 2 from Back Reat

Screen - E-Mail Activation

After filling out the screen, select: **Request Unlock Key by E-Mail - send E-Mail**. This will open your default E-Mail client. An e-mail with the hardware IDs and license information will be created. Press **send** to send the e-mail to our activation center. You will get an **Unlock Key** back within 2-3 business days.



E-Mail Activation -Send E-Mail

Create Unlock Key

The Unlock Key is generated in the TAB Administration, Create Unlock Key with Copy

Protection 116 or Create Unlock Key without Copy Protection. 117 If you are using the Web Activation Server, then see Create Unlock Key using the Web Activation Server. 118

Enter Unlock Key

After requesting the Unlock Key by E-Mail, the screen shown below will appear during each start of the program. Type in the Unlock Key you got back by e-mail or fax. Press the button *Next*. If the Activation is successful, the screen <u>Activation finished</u> is displayed.



Enter Unlock Key

4.2.4 Activation by Fax

The Fax Activation requires the Serial Number, company name and e-mail address. After filling out the first screen, a print page with the hardware IDs and Serial Number will be generated. You have to send one key back to the customer to activate the copy protection (see screen Enter Unlock Key [134]). Details of the workflow. [322]

This activation option is defined in the screen - Settings

	Request Unlock Key by Fax
Licence	Enter Serial Number
Protector	678U0-310C9-94F7m-A287n-0d18N-0Q1FH
and the	You can not find your Serial Number?
erial Number	Enter Name/Company
you don't have a valid Serial inber you can buy the software.	Tom Hanks
	Enter your E-Mail Address
Buy it	Tom Hanks Banartinc.com
ease enter all information that is quested in order to start the thration process.	Your entered reastivation information should be sent to the Activation Center. You will receive an E-Meil or
	Pax containing information to unlock this software.
	Request Unlock Key by Fax - print Fax
	You can also activate the software online
	You can also request an unlock key by E-Mai
	You can also request an unlock key by Phone
tow Licence Information	Back Next

Fax Activation

Request Unlock Key

After filling out the screen, select: **Request Unlock Key by Fax - print Fax**. This will open a report with the hardware IDs and license information. Press **print** to print the report and then fax it to the number provided in the report. You will get an **Unlock Key** back within 2-3 business days.

Fax-Registration for Multimedia Edition - Flash Demo Send this fax to +49 721/151599638
Name/Company: Tom Hanks
Serial Number: 678U0-31CC9-9AF7m-AZ87n-Dd18N-0Q1FH
In block 1 at position 5 there is the digit 0 In block 6 at position 1 there is the digit 0 E-Mail-Address: Tom.Hanks@smartinc.com
Tratoodas: 01. 6778008 02. 7280000 03. HB00A2ED 04. HB0A2ED 05. 9753003 06. 2AANTD2 07. 20818098 08. 06805808 09. 06805808 09. BA32248A

The unlock key will be sent within 1-2 business days. Project: flash-demo - MCR001

Fax Activation - Print Fax

Create Unlock Key

The Unlock Key is generated in the TAB Administration, <u>Create Unlock Key with Copy</u> <u>Protection</u> [116] or <u>Create Unlock Key without Copy Protection</u>. [117] If you are using the Web Activation Server, then see <u>Create Unlock Key using the Web Activation Server</u>. [118]

Enter Unlock Key

After requesting the Unlock Key by E-Mail, the screen shown below will appear during each start of the program. Type in the Unlock Key you got back by e-mail or fax. Press the button *Next*. If the Activation is successful, the screen <u>Activation finished</u> is displayed.

Y Activation of Multimedia Edition	- Flash Demo	×
Licence Protector	Enter Unlock Key If we have received information to wids Nationals Editor - Tain Dess, please now the Valid cry(t), If have a new two me law, when one key after worker in the control order. Held suce to enter keys in a core provide manner.	
About Unlocking		
Enter all received lays to unlock the software.	Anyly Key	
Show Licence Information	Back Next	

Enter Unlock Key

4.2.5 Activation by Phone

The Phone Activation requires the Serial Number and company name. After filling out the first screen, a screen with the phone number and also displaying the hardware IDs and Serial Number will pop up. The Unlock Key can be entered directly in this screen. Details of the workflow. [322]

This activation option is defined in the screen - Settings

Activation of Multimedia Edition	n - riash Demo	2
Loonse	Request Unlock Key by Phone Enter Serial Number	
Protoctor	678U0-31009-94F7m-4287h-0d18N-0Q1FH	
Comme Line	You can not find your Serial Number?	
Serial Number	Enter Name/Company	
f you don't have a valid Serial fumber you can buy the software.	Tom Hanks	
Buy it		
Rease enter all information that is equested in order to start the inclusion process.		
	Thus consider activate. The authories active Thus consider research as authories. At the Thus consider research as authorities for the Tan	
How Licence Information	Back Rext	

Phone Activation - Step 1

Request Unlock Key

Now call the phone number which is displayed. First specify the **Serial Number**. You will then be asked for one Installation code. Type in the Unlock Key you get and press the button *Apply Key*.

Y Activation of Multimedia Edition	Flash Demo	E
L conte	Request Unlock Key by Phone Please dial the number +49 700 54885342 to activate Multimedia Edition - Flash Demo. When asked you should tell your Serial Numb 67810-3102-94F7m-A287n-Dd18N-0Q1FH and one of the followin installation codes.	
	No Installation Code	
About Unlocking	01 6F7820C8	
	02 728CAD9C	
Enter all received keys to unlock the software.	03 #850A28D	
and the second s	04 E880A28D	
	05 9F530083	
	06 2ACAF02C	
	07 20618098	
	08 06805EC8	
	09 BAA3248A	
	If house received information to unicid Nutlineds (diffion-Traffic Deva), please enter the Usido (argh()) if the is an and the net key, within on key after another in the control and r. Neils aux to enter keys in a calce-desider name: Apply Kery	
Show Licence Information	Back Next	
Dhone	Activation - Stop 2	

Phone Activation - Step 2

Create Unlock Key

The Unlock Key is generated in the TAB Administration, <u>Create Unlock Key with Copy</u> <u>Protection</u> [116] or <u>Create Unlock Key without Copy Protection</u>. [117] If you are using the Web Activation Server, then see <u>Create Unlock Key using the Web Activation Server</u>. [118]

4.2.6 Enter Unlock Key

After requesting an unlock key via <u>e-mail</u> 131 or <u>fax</u> 132 this screen will appear with the next program start. Typing in the unlock key activates the software copy protection. The registration process is completed. The screen <u>Activation Successful</u> 135 is displayed.

♥ Activation of Multimedia Edition	i - Flash Demo
Series and Days Protection and Lawren Control and Lawren Control	Enter Unlock Key If you have received information to unlock Multimedia Edition - Flash Demo, please enter the Unlock Key(s). If there is more than one key, enter one key after another in the correct order. Make sure to enter keys in a case-sensitive manner.
About Unlocking	
Enter all received keys to unlock the software.	Арріу Кеу
Show Licence Information	Back Next

4.2.7 Activation Successful

After Online Activation or successfully entering an Unlock key, this screen will appear to indicate that the activation process is finished. The next start of the Multimedia Player will display a screen only in case of an error.



4.2.8 Evaluation Period Expired / No evaluation version

If the evaluation period defined in the screen - <u>Licence Information</u> 1^{1} - has expired or the option , <u>No evaluation version - Serial number needed to start</u> was selected, this screen will appear. It is not possible to continue.





4.2.9 Copy Protection Violation

138

If the version is installed on another PC after activation, the <u>copy protection</u> will be violated. It is not possible to continue.

Y Activation of Multimedia Edition	i - Flash Demo
Ficence Froiscor Settingte Coup Protection and Lister Course Transmotor	Sorry, it is not possible to continue At start of Multimedia Edition - Flash Demo the following problem has occurred The Installation Code of the licence file does not match with Code 1. Please contact your system administrator
Troubles?!	
Please make sure that the software is installed correctly. Make sure that the software is registered. If you cannot solve this problem, please contact our support.	Show licence information
	Eliu

4.2.10 No free license available

If the Multimedia Player is used with a network license and more users / Pcs then defined in the screen - <u>Licence Information</u> - try to start the Multimedia Player. Then this error message will appear. It is not possible to continue.

139



O A user / PC license can be deactivated from the end user within the Licence Viewer

4.2.11 Licence Viewer

The License Viewer is part of the Multimedia Player and is a **complete administration interface** for the end user. It can be accessed from any screen during the activation and registration process with the link *Show License Information*. The License Viewer can also be invoked by starting the Multimedia Player with the parameter **-v** (see <u>Start Options</u> 2009) or it can be added in the program manager group using the <u>installer</u> (parameter *ShowLicenseInfo*).

You can also use a standard text file with the extension .BAT (e.g. viewer.bat), which has only one line with the command:

xy-player.exe -v

whereas xy-player.exe is the name of your Multimedia Player of your product. You can download a <u>sample here</u>.

Features

• Basic license information [291] like manufacturer, company, copy protection status and

system information

- License information per module [293] (number of licenses, time limitation, demo version, activation status)
- List of users, PCs and concurrent users for each module. Allows to remove / deactivate \$293\$ a user / PC / item
- Option to apply Activation Keys
- Option to activate log file 295

🖆 License Viewer	
License Viewer Marufacturer: Mirage Computer Systems GmbH Company: Evaluation Installation Codes Modules Modules MIRAGE-02-01 System License File: C:\Program Files\Multimedia Protector Premium\2.0\Demodata\flash-demo\Deploy-1\flash-demo.lic License File: D: 64 License File Date : 10.04.2008 19:27:00 Advanced Security Level	
Deactivate Activation Key Refresh Info Options	Close

See also

Basic license information 291 Module Information 293 Deactivate a network license 293

4.3 Add-Ons

Add-On tools are provided to cover specific requirements. They are provided on an 'AS IS' basis. These tools must never be used and distributed without the Multimedia Player.

Menu Creator [273] - lets you create own flash menus Music Player [141] - protects mp3 files Photo Album [144] - 2 different albums to present photos

٩

MIRAGE MAKES NO REPRESENTATION, WARRANTY, OR GUARANTY AS TO THE RELIABILITY, TIMELINESS, QUALITY, SUITABILITY, TRUTH, AVAILABILITY, ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE SOFTWARE MENTIONED IN THIS TUTORIAL. MIRAGE DOES NOT REPRESENT OR WARRANT THAT (A) THE USE OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE SECURE, TIMELY, UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE OR OPERATE IN COMBINATION WITH ANY OTHER HARDWARE, SOFTWARE, SYSTEM OR DATA, (B) THE SOFTWARE WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS OR EXPECTATIONS, (C) ERRORS OR DEFECTS WILL BE CORRECTED, OR (D) THE SOFTWARE IS FREE OF VIRUSES OR OTHER HARMFUL COMPONENTS.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED TO YOU STRICTLY ON AN "AS IS" BASIS. ALL CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS, ARE HEREBY DISCLAIMED TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW BY MIRAGE.

4.3.1 Music Player

Multimedia Protector comes with a music player for MP3 files. It can be found on the directory ...\Add-Ons\Music Player

1 A sample how to protect music files with this player is provided with *mp3-demo.mme*.

-		A	Flash.com	MP3 Player
A4Flash A4Desk Fla	shmap Choose	a category:	Music Sar	mple 1
	Category: Title: Composer:	Music Sar Song1 Songster		
		_	LOAD STATUS	⊴,,)

The buttons, category, title and composer can be defined. The free player is limited to 10 songs. If you want an unlimited player or player with your own logo, you can buy it directly on the A4flash Website - <u>Click here to buy</u>

O The music player can be used with Multimedia Protector, but it is not allowed to distribute the files as a standalone application without Multimedia Protector

See also Configuration of the Player 142 Include Player in Project 144 How to edit an XML file 258

4.3.1.1 Configuration of the Player

The configuration of the music player is done with the **radio.xml**. It can be modified using any editor. If you do not have an XML Editor see <u>How to edit an XML file</u> [258].

• Never use a absolute path like c:\files which points to your disk drive on the PC. Always use a relative path like **radio/01.mp3.**



Button

You can define the labels of the buttons which appear on the player. You can place a different link per button. If you do not need the button, leave text and link empty. The button will be invisible.

```
<button id="1" text="A4Flash" link="http://a4flash.com/lib/access/" />
```

Station name

To structure the presentation of the songs use different station names like Pop, Classic.

```
<station name="Classical Music" text="test">
```

<u>Song</u>

Define the title, composer, mp3 file, image and links for the buttons. You always have to use relative paths for the mp3 file and the image like used in the sample. You can have

any number of songs per station within the limitation of the free version (10 songs).

</song>

 		A	Flash.com	MP3 Player
A4Flash A4Desk Fla	shmap Choose	a category:	Music Sam	nple 1 💌
The state of the	Category:	Music Sar	nple 1	
	Title:	Song1		
	Composer:	Songster		
		_	LOAD STATUS	<,)
	<pre> <song> define image, categ tilte, composer</song></pre>	огу.	B	

4.3.1.2 Include Player in Project

To include the music placer into the project, just copy the files:

- music-player.swf
- radio.xml

as well as all used images and mp3 files to your data source directory and import the files in the screen - Data Import as.

4.3.2 Photo Album

Multimedia Protector comes with 2 different photo albums. You can use a photo album to distribute JPG files. It can be found on the directory ...\Add-Ons\PhotoAlbum and then ...\album1 and..\album2

• A sample for jpg files with these photo-albums is provided with *photo-album1-demo. mme* and *photo-album2-demo.mme*.

Album 1

This is a photo album which allows placing a lot of text and present the photos in different categories.


Album 2

This is a photo album which allows placing a lot photos on one page including thumbnail and big size photo as well as a short description per photo.



O The Photo Album can be used with Multimedia Protector, but it is not allowed to distribute the files as a standalone application without Multimedia Protector.

• If you need animations and a slide show, use <u>http://albumcreator.firmtools.com/</u>, Adobe Lightroom or the freeware tool from <u>Airtight</u> (simple Viewer, PostCardViewer, AutoViewer).

See also

Use Photo Album 1 Use Photo Album 2 0ther Photo Albums Include Photo Album in Project How to edit an XML file 258

4.3.2.1 Album 1

To use this Album, copy all files from ...\Add-Ons\PhotoAlbum\Album1 to a new directory. You may not rename the folder names.

You can start the file **photo-portfolio.swf** to browse through the demo album.

() Never use a absolute path like c:\files which points to your disk drive on the PC. Always use a relative path like **\img\flash\gallery_01**.

Textlabels

The text that appears on the album can be modified with the file setup.txt.

- Go to the folder ...\Add-Ons\PhotoAlbum\Album1\Set
- Open the file setup.txt and change the text

You will find a more detail description in one up the next updates of the online help

Images

The images have to be placed on a subfolder for each section, which was defined in the setup.txt file with **&title_section_1 or &title_section_2** (sample: &title_section_1=men)

For each section you need a subfolder ..\Add-Ons\PhotoAlbum\Album1\img\flash\ gallery_01

To add images for gallery 1 (title_section_1 in the setup.txt)

- Go to the .\Add-Ons\PhotoAlbum\Album1\img\flash\gallery_01
- Delete the default images
- Each image to add must be renamed:

pic_1_gall_01_bg.jpg (picture 01, big)

pic_1_gall_01_sm.jpg (picture 01, small)

pic_1_gall_02_bg.jpg (picture 02, big)

pic_1_gall_02_sm.jpg (picture 02, small)

• Add your pictures for each gallery in the folder ..img\flash\gallery_01-img\flash\ gallery_03 and for the Home Tab in img\flash\home

After adding all files, select the main folder **Album1** to <u>import</u> it. Define **photo-portfolio.swf** as starting-file.

Look & Feel of the Album



4.3.2.2 Album 2

To use this Album, copy all files from ...\Add-Ons\PhotoAlbum\Album2 to a new directory. You may not rename the folder names.

You can start the file **gallery.swf** to browse through the demo album.

() Never use a absolute path like c:\files which points to your disk drive on the PC. Always use a relative path like **\img\flash\gallery_01**.

Textlabels

The text that appears on the album, can be modified with the files **pictures.xml** and **personal_setup.xml**

- Go to the folder ...\Add-Ons\PhotoAlbum\Album2\xml
- Open the file **pictures.xml** with any xml Editor (notepad, Word). If you do not have an XML Editor see <u>How to edit an XML file</u> [258]

You can define a name per section / galleryname (<gallery name="1">) and you have to define each image you want to use

<image source="pics/pic1.jpg" thumb="pics/th1.jpg" descr="description 1"/>

whare source = the subfolder and big image name, thumb = name of small image, descr = title of the image • Your personal settings can be configured in personal_setup.xml

You will find a more detail description in one up the next updates of the online help

Images

The images have to be placed in a subfolder ...\Add-Ons\PhotoAlbum\Album2\pics and added in the pictures.xml file.

After adding all files, select the main folder **Album1** to \underline{import} it. Define **gallery.swf** as starting-file.

Look & Feel of the Album



See also How to edit an XML file 258

4.3.2.3 Include Photo Album in Project

To include the photo album in the project, just copy the files:

- <u>Album 1 (photo-portfolio.swf</u>, folder ..\set)
- <u>Album 2</u> [148] (gallery.swf, folder ..\xml)

as well as all used images and files to your data source directory and import the files in the screen - Data Import $\boxed{83}$.

4.3.2.4 Airtight

150

There are great photo albums, which you can download from Airtight - <u>http://www.airtightinteractive.com/simpleviewer/</u>

- SimpleViewer
- PostcardViewer
- AutoViewer

You find there also a description, how you can create the photo album using a popular tool like PhotoShop, Picasa, Porta, iPhoto, RapidWeaver, Aperture, Adobe Lightroom 43 - details

For protecting files with Airtight, the following steps are necessary.

■ Airtight AutoViewer

Import B ALL B files (swf, html, js..) and make viewer.swf the start file



Airtight PostcardViewer

Import 33 ALL 33 files 3 (swf, html, js..) and make viewer.swf the start file

152

C:\tmp\jghtroom 1.3.1\galler	ytest\ightroor Read Files	from Folder	Define as sta
Select Data Fold	er Refresh Se	elected Files	Delet
	Media File		State
low to protect?	flashobject.js		ok
	🔷 imagedata.xml		ok
Audio / Music	images\dsc02377.jpg		ok
EXE Files	images\dsc02379.jpg		ok
(mages / Photos	Images\dsc02380.jpg		ok
	Images\dsc02381.jpg		ok
<u>PDF Files</u>	Images\dsc02382.jpg		ok
PPT Files	Images\dsc02383.jpg		ok
Videos winages\dsc02384.jpg			ok
Word Documents	Images\dsc02441.jpg		ok
HTML	images\dsc02442.jpg		ok
	🛷 index.html		ok
low to use a menu?	viewer.swf		ok
Advanced Menu			
Basic Menu			
	Use advanced menu		
Settings	Image	Player Opti	ons
License Information	Data Import	Save	

■ Airtight Simple Viewer

Import 33 ALL 33 files 33 (swf, html, js..) and make viewer.swf the start file



4.4 Details about Copy Protection

4.4.1 The Basics about Copy Protection

This feature prevents that the application can be run on different machines. It binds the license file 160 to a hardware specific item.

The user cannot move the Multimedia Player from computer A to computer B, because the hardware identifiers that are used for Copy Protection will be different on any other

machine - Copy protection does not prevent the copy process, but starting the Multimedia Player on non-licensed machines.

The place where the license file is stored is used to determine the hardware information of the machine.

- If the license file is stored on a local machine, the hardware of the local machine will be used.
- If the license file is stored on a server, then the server hardware is used (<u>Volume ID</u> 155], <u>MAC Address</u> 155], <u>Hostname</u> 157]). When starting the application on a local machine within a network, Multimedia Player retrieves the server hardware even if the application is running on the local machine
- If the license file is stored on a NAS drive (Network attached storage), then the hardware of the NAS is used (<u>Volume ID</u> 155], <u>MAC Address</u> 155], <u>Hostname</u> 157]). When starting the application on a local machine within a network, Multimedia Player retrieves the NAS hardware even if the application is running on the local machine

Copy Protection can be used as an option. You can create a license without Copy Protection by just sending out an <u>Unlock Key without Copy Protection</u> [117].

4.4.2 Hardware IDs

Hardware IDs are often referenced as installation codes, because the codes are only available after the installation of the

application on a machine. The hardware IDs are referenced with installation code numbers to prevent that the user knows the criteria which are used. The installation code numbers are itemized in brackets after the name of the hardware ID. The hardware ID is always an 8 digit code.

The following hardware IDs are supported:

- <u>Volume ID</u> 155 (1)
- MAC Address of the network adapter [155] (2)
- <u>Hostname</u> 157 (3)
- <u>Volume ID and UNC Pathname</u> (5)
- MAC Address and UNC Pathname [158] (6)
- <u>USB Stick</u> 159 (11) ¹⁾

¹⁾ only available in the Premium Edition

1 For a server license only use an installation code combined with the UNC pathname.

If a hardware ID can not be retrieved (e.g. there is no network adapter) then the code is empty.

4.4.3 Transferring Hardware IDs

Using the Online Activation, the hardware IDs are automatically transferred to the Web Activation server. Using activation by e-mail, fax or phone, the codes have to be sent to you and you have to send and unlock key back.

The complete process is described in the chapter: <u>Worflow - from Distribution to</u> <u>Activation 316</u>

4.4.4 Volume ID (1)

Each hard disk drive (even a USB stick) has a volume ID (like a Serial Number). To view the current Volume ID of a drive, you can just perform a **dir <drive>:** and the volume Serial Number is shown on the second line down, e.g.

Volume in drive E is system Volume Serial Number is **BC09-8AE4**

The Serial Number can be changed using tools, and if a drive is imaged, the volume ID will be imaged as well.

Pros/Cons

- + Always available and always working
- + Works in single user and network environment
- After reinstallation of Windows, the volume ID changes
- Volume ID's are always the same whenever a image tool is used to set up a drive
- Allows several installations on the same machine

Recommendation

- Good for applications used by home users because the criteria are always available
- The only choice, if the license file is stored on a memory stick

4.4.5 MAC Address (2)

This is a good criteria for single user installations, because it is still available after a reinstallation of a machine and is independent of disk imaging. There are a few things to be considered in a server environment.

Server with 2 network adapters

If a server has more than one adapter, with some PCs accessing the server through adapter 1, some through adapter 2, a copy protection violation will occur. In this case we recommend switching to the criteria $\underline{Volume ID + UNC Pathname}_{158}$.

Server with subnets

In a subnet portioned network environment the MAC address should not be used. All PCs in outer subnets cannot retrieve the MAC address. Switch to Volume ID or Hostname in combination with UNC path as means of copy protection.

Novell Server

Multimedia Protector can be used on a Novell server for licensing, but the Software Copy Protection will not work, because the hardware information like Volume ID or MAC address cannot be retrieved from the server.

W-Lan Adapter

Some W-Lan Adapters are 'invisble' for Windows, whenever the network cable is unplugged or a notebook is in battery mode. Switch to hostname 157.

PDA with network adapter

If a PDA with an in-built network adapter is **connected to the PC during the activation**, it could happen that this network adapter is used, because the network adapter of the PDA is added to the PCs network adapters. The PDA should be disconnected, and then the MAC address can be used for copy protection.

Windows 98 /NT

The software copy protection with installation code 2 cannot be used, whenever using Windows 98 / NT with the license file being **on the server**. A Windows 98 / NT system cannot retrieve this information from the server.

Recommendation: Use installation code 5, 1 or 3 within a network installation with Windows 98 / NT machines.

The installation code 2 works with Windows 98 / NT, whenever the license file is on the local machine.

Note:

- There will be no future support for Windows 98 and Multimedia Protector with the complete functionality.
- A MAC address can be faked with tools
- If Multimedia Protector cannot retrieve a MAC address the instcode 2 is empty

Pros/Cons

- + After reinstallation of Windows, the MAC address does not change
- + If an image tool is used, the MAC address is still different
- + Good within a network, because the MAC address must be unique

- See considerations above for multiple network cards
- Restricted use in network environment with Windows 98 / NT machines
- Allows several installations of the application on the same machine.

Recommendation

Should be used for enterprise users because disk imaging is often used to set up multiple machines and a reinstallation of Windows does not need a new licensing.

4.4.6 **Hostname (3)**

A Windows machine's NetBIOS name is not to be confused with the computer's host name. Each computer running TCP/IP (whether it's a Windows machine or not) has a host name (also sometimes called a machine name). You can view/change it on the DNS tab in Control Panel -> Network -> TCP/IP -> Properties Host names are used by applications such as telnet, ftp, web browsers, etc. In order to connect to a computer running the TCP/IP protocol using its HOST name, the host name must be resolved into an IP Address (the host name or FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name)-IP address resolution is typically done by something called DNS - Domain Name System/Service). Changing a computer's Host name DOES NOT change its NetBIOS name.

Note

If a local PC does not have a network adapter and uses a dial-up connection for registration then the hostname could change between 'localhost' and the hostname used for the dial-up connection. The only solution for this scenario is to use the NetBIOS computer name.

Pros/Cons

- + Works in single user and network environment
- + Good within a network because the hostname must be unique
- After reinstallation of Windows, the hostname changes
- See considerations above with dial-up connections
- Allows several installations on the same machine.

Recommendation

• Should be used for enterprise users who have problems using the installation code with the MAC address

4.4.7 NetBIOS Computer Name (4)

This is the recommended installation code for single user.

Each computer running Windows has a NetBIOS name; you can view/change it on the identification tab in Control Panel -> Network. Various services & client tools, including Network Neighbourhood and NET USE, use NetBIOS names. The NetBIOS name is specified when Windows networking is installed/configured. In order to connect to a computer running TCP/IP via its NetBIOS name, the name must be resolved to an IP Address (the NetBIOS name-IP address resolution is often done by WINS - NetBIOS Name Server). A computer's NetBIOS name is often the same as that computer's host name [157], but it doesn't have to be.

Pros/Cons

- + Works always in single user environment
- + See considerations regarding hostname 157 with dial-up connections

+ Works even in Notebooks with W-Lan adapter when disconnected from the local network

- After reinstallation of Windows, the NetBIOS computer name changes
- Only usable for **single user** installations
- Allows several installations on the same machine.

Recommendation

• If you do have only single user installations then use the NetBIOS name

4.4.8 Volume ID + UNC Pathname (server licence) (5)

This Installation Code combines the Volume ID with UNC pathname (details).

Pros/Cons

- + Always available and always working
- + Works in single user and network environment
- + Allows only one installation on one machine
- After reinstallation of Windows, the volume ID changes
- Volume ID's are always the same whenever a image tool is used to set up a drive

Recommendation

• Should be used for enterprise users who have problems using the installation code with the MAC address and who want to make sure that the application is only installed once

1 For a server license only use an installation code combined with the UNC pathname.



This code results in a copy protection error if you work on the server AND on the workstation. It only works if the server is used as a dedicated server and the Multimedia Player is not started on the server.

4.4.9 MAC Address + UNC Pathname (server licence) (6)

This Installation Code combines the MAC address with the UNC pathname (details)

Pros/Cons

- + After reinstallation of Windows, the MAC address does not change
- + If an image tool is used, the MAC address is still different
- + Good within a network, because the MAC address must be unique
- + Allows only one installation on one machine
- See considerations above for multiple network cards
- Restricted use in network environment with Windows 98 / NT machines

Recommendation

• Should be used for enterprise users because disk imaging is often used to set up

multiple machines and a reinstallation of Windows does not need a new licensing.

10 For a server license only use an installation code combined with the UNC pathname.

This code results in a copy protection error if you work on the server AND on the workstation. It only works if the server is used as a dedicated server and the Multimedia Player is not started on the server.

4.4.10 USB Stick (11)

Multimedia Protector offers a unique technology to use a standard USB stick as a 'Dongle replacement'. Now the times are over where you have to decide whether to use a software copy protection or a Dongle.

The big advantage compared with a dongle is, that nearly any standard USB stick can be used. You can send out the USB stick with your project files already loaded on the stick or the customer can use his own USB stick. If a USB stick can be used or not depends on the fact, if the manufacturer has added a special information like a kind of a Serial Number of the USB stick.

If a module with a license per PC is used, the usage of the USB stick can be limited to a specified number of PCs.

Pros/Cons

- + Works always in single user environment
- + Customer can use a single user license on different machines
- + The number of machines, where the USB stick can be used, can be limited
- Only usable for single user installations
- Hardware is involved
- Not all USB sticks will work

For details how to use the USB stick see chapter: Using an USB stick as a Dongle replacement 312.

O The USB stick protection can only be used as a **single PC / single user** license. A network license is not supported as a PC cannot retrieve the hardware information of the USB stick when it is used on a server.

10 The USB protection works only with Windows XP and Windows Vista.

 \bigcirc This feature is available only in the Multimedia Protector Premium $\overline{56}$ version.

4.5 Distribute the Project

4.5.1 The Basics about Distributing a Project

After a project has been created successfully and <u>Distribute / Save</u> has been selected, a folder with all necessary files for distribution will be generated.

The folder name is **..\Deploy** and is a subfolder of the project folder $|_{124}$. Example: ..\Flash-Demo **Deploy**

O Never store other files in this folder (on the hard disk). The files in this folder are deleted when the project is saved.

The folder contains 4 files. All files are named according the settings: <u>Name Of Player</u> in the *Settings* screen. You can copy these files to a CD/DVD or <u>USB stick</u> 312. Never use a folder name Deploy on the CD/DVD or USB stick as the product does not start then.

The Multimedia Player

The Multimedia Player has the extension **.EXE** and is the main application which includes all the necessary functionality to display the file and monitor copy protection and licensing.

Example: flash-demo.exe

You cannot start the Multimedia Player in this folder, because the <u>license file</u> ²⁴ is modified with each start and cannot be used any longer for distribution. If you want to make a life test, copy the complete Deploy folder to another directory.

The Data File

The data file contains all the files selected in the <u>Data Import section</u> in an encrypted format. It has the extension .**MMF**.

Example: flash-demo.mmf

1 Never deploy the project file with the extension .mme

The Licence File

The license file contains all <u>licensing</u> 23° and <u>copy protection</u> 22° information. It has the extension .**LIC**

Example: flash-demo.lic

10 To be 100% sure that you have a new license file, just create the deploy folder again before you distribute the project.

To test a project use the <u>Testdrive</u> 2 option.

Autorun File

When distributing the files on a CD, the **autorun.inf** file would start the Multimedia Player after the CD is inserted in the drive.



A user does not need to have a flash or another player like PPT or PDF reader installed. All necessary components are included in the Multimedia Player, no installation will be required and the protected application can be started even directly from CD.

4.5.2 Distribute a CD/DVD

To deliver a CD/DVD, just copy all files from the <u>folder deploy</u> to the CD/DVD. If you want to install the files from the CD to a hard disk drive, use the <u>ready to go installer</u>.

Never start the Multimedia Player for testing before you make the CD/DVD, as the <u>license file</u> is modified with each start and cannot be used any longer for distribution. **The CD/DVD must be finalized (no modification is possible after the CD/DVD is burned) and it must be a Read Only CD/DVD.** Don't use a Live File System (CD/DVD can be used like a hard disk) like Vista offers. The best option is to use a CD/DVD burning software which makes sure, that the CD cannot be modified after burning.

Using a RW CD/DVD would result in an error because the Multimedia Player would try to modify the license file. When the Multimedia Player is directly started from a CD/DVD, then the license file is automatically copied during the first program start to a folder on the hard disk, where each user has a read and a write access.

See also Adding an Installer

4.5.3 Distribute via a download link

To distribute via a download link, all files from the <u>folder deploy</u> 163 have to be packed into **one ZIP file**. Use the option **Save as ZIP** in the <u>Screen - Save</u> 91.

• Never start the Multimedia Player for testing before you make the exe or zip file, as the <u>license file</u> is modified with each start and cannot be used any longer for distribution

See also Adding an Installer

4.5.4 Using Multimedia Protector Installer

The <u>Premium</u> $|_{56}$ version comes with a ready to go installation manager. It allows installing the files from CD or download link to the hard disk. It also offers a network installation for Client PC's. The installer files can be found on the folder \Multimedia Protector Premium 2.0 installer.

The installation manager includes the following features:

- Copies all files to a specified directory
- Adds the necessary user rights to the specified directory
- Copies the player, database mmf file and the license file to the specified directory, including an icon file
- Adds a program manager group and an entry within the program manager group to start the Multimedia Player
- Adds uninstall information
- Installation dialogs are available in multiple languages

You can change the icon on the desktop and in the program manager group with an own bespoke icon.

The installer consists of 2 files:

- setup.exe (installer file for single user installation) or setup-network.exe (for network installation)
- setup.ini (configuration file for installer)

Copy these 2 files from the main installation folder ...\Multimedia Protector Premium (2.0) **installer** to the deploy folder of your project. Then modify the <u>setup.ini file</u> with any editor. The name of the installer can be renamed, e.g. to setup-abc.exe. The name of the ini file must be setup.ini.

If you want to start the installer directly after a CD is inserted, modify the file autorun. inf.

[autorun] icon=flash-demo.exe open=**setup.exe** Name=Multimedia Protector - Flash Demo

 \bigcirc This feature is available only in the Multimedia Protector Premium \bigcirc version.

See also

Configuration File - Setup.ini 262 Single User Installation 264 Network Installation

4.6 Executables (exe file)

Multimedia Protector supports a protection of .EXE files.

You can start EXE files from <u>flash applications</u> for secure <u>standalone EXE</u> files.

It is possible to protect standalone exe files (wrap an application) and also exe files, that need additional files like configuration files or dll - see chapter Secure standalone exe file (s) 166

How does it work?

- The exe file is imported into the encrypted database and not visible. It is completely protected
- When the exe file is invoked, it is extracted to the hard disk to a hidden place and started



The security of exe files is different compared with swf files. Swf files are loaded directly into the memory and are never visible on a disk. The exe file has to be saved temporarily on a folder.

If Source Code is available, **the protection can be improved significantly by defining a password** [168], which is required to start the EXE file.

See also

Secure standalone exe file(s) 166 Flash application using exe file 167 Define Password for EXE file 168 Read Configuration Data 173

This feature is available only in the Multimedia Protector <u>Premium</u> 56 version.
 <u>Concurrent user</u> 23 is not supported when the main application is an EXE file.

166

4.6.1 Secure standalone exe file(s)

Multimedia Protector supports copy protection and complete licensing for stand-alone EXE files. It wraps the EXE file and additional files into the encrypted database. This kind of protection is not as strong as the Source Code integration with <u>Licence Protector</u> but a good choice if you do not have any Source Code or you do not want to spend time to add copy protection and licensing.

If you have just one or more EXE file and additional files like DLL or configuration files, <u>import</u> it and define one exe file as a start file. After the initial tests like evaluation or product activation have been done, the Multimedia Player **starts the exe file, extracts all other imported files** and terminates automatically so that only the EXE file will be active.

Multimedia Protector - calc-r	np [C:\kundendaten\word	hyperlink + exestart\calc-mp.mme]		0
Data Impoi				
		Read Files from Folder	Define as starting file)
Select Data Folder		Refresh Selected Files	Delete	j
	Media File		State	
ow to protect?	Interest Content of the second		ok	
udio / Music				
KE Files				
nages / Photos				
DF Files				
PT Files				
ideos				
<u>/ord Documents</u>				
TML				
ow to use a menu?				
dvanced Menu				
asic Menu				
	Use advanced menu			
	Starting params of the EXE	fuU0Nb6ir1Ts3cC1	satHF 1RctWD27WyqX 1YW21R0ZFpuY 1jXN0V	V2f1WQM1
Settings	Image	Player Op	otions A	dministration
License Information	Data Import	Save		(

O All files (EXE file and all additional files) are extracted to the hard disk during runtime - see main <u>chapter Executables</u> **165**. The file of the database should have maximum 80-100 MB. Otherwise the loading time would be too long.

1 If the EXE file opens configuration files and the files are expected on the same folder like the EXE file, try to use the option Run in installation directory [38] or better, retrieve the correct path by reading the configuration data [173].

4.6.2 Flash application using exe files

If you have a flash application that invokes exe files, the fscommand will be supported. It works as follows:

- Extract the file from the encrypted database to the hard disk to a hidden place
- Start the file
- The file is not removed after termination

In case you load files in your exe file, you have to be aware that these files have to be available on the new directory. You have to extract these files first from the database to the directory (see below). If your exe file creates new files, you should always create it on the same folder or subfolder - but never use a hard coded path.

If you have multiple files like configuration files, you can add special commands to your flash application. This gives you more control.

Use one of the following commands:

http://FILE:testfile.exe or http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$START

This command extracts the exe file from the database to a temporary folder and starts it. The file must be an exe file. The Multimedia Player is still activated. When the Multimedia Player is closed, it tries to **delete the exe file**. This is only possible if the exe file was terminated - if it is still running it cannot be deleted.

http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$STARTKEEP

Same as parameter \$\$START, but does **NOT delete** the exe file after termination.

http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$COPY

Just extracts the file from the database, but do not start it. This command can be used with any file type like DLL or txt. If you need multiple files (e.g. not only exe files but also dlls or configuration files), you can first extract all these files and at the end start the main exe file using http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$START. When the Multimedia Player is closed, it tries to delete all extracted files.

http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$COPYKEEP

Same as parameter **\$\$COPY**, but does **NOT delete** the exe file after termination

You can add a pathname where you want to extract the files, in case you do not want to use the temporary folder.

Sample: loadMovie("http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$COPYKEEP\$\$c:\mypath\testfile.exe",2)

would extract the file testfile.exe from the database to the folder c:\mypath

http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$RUN

This commands starts an exe file which is already available on the CD or hard disk. It can be used to start any external application. The file is not deleted after termination. The file must be on the same folder like the **Multimedia Player**. A pathname cannot be used.

Sample: loadMovie("http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$RUN",2);

The http://FILE: command also works with HTML and BAT files.

Invoke a BATCH file

You can invoke a .BAT file to perform any type of tasks. The .bat file must be on the same folder as the player. With a batch file you could e.g. invoke a huge AVI file, which will then be played in the default player.

Command: loadMovie("http://FILE:avistart.bat\$\$RUN",2)

The avistart.bat needs only the name of the avi file:

sample.avi

4.6.3 Define password for EXE file

The protection can be improved significantly by providing a password as a command line parameter. This option should be used if source code is available. If you do not have a source code, you could use an EXE packer to add the password.

- The application only starts, if the password, provided in the command line, is correct
- The password should be at least 30 characters long and should contain numbers, upper and lower case characters e.g. r1nBLCV1rZLZI0YyG7J1BiGNc2cLtZg21pfxm1nv9JI2f34fs2ajVw31ToTQL1QYt

The password may not contain spaces and the character "

When a EXE file is specified as a start file, a new option is visible: <u>Command line</u> parameter for EXE file 33

The Multimedia Player provides the password during runtime when the EXE file is invoked.

We recommend splitting the password in different parts and variables of the application to prevent, that a hacker can find out the command line by analyzing the EXE file.

Sample

A very simple method would be to hide the strings in different program parts and make calculations. You can implement more sophistic code like the one below. This is just to outline an idea.

x\$="2"

```
\label{eq:astrange} \begin{array}{l} a\$=r1nBLCV1rZLZI0YyG7J1BiGNc2cLtZg+str\$((val(x\$)+1)*7)pfxm1nv9Jl+x\$ \\ a\$=f34fs+x\$+ajVw31ToTQL1QYt \end{array}
```

commandparameter\$=a\$+b\$+c\$

.NET offers a SecureString Class. It represents text that should be kept confidential. The text is encrypted for privacy when being used, and deleted from computer memory when no longer needed. For details see: <u>http://msdn2.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.securestring.aspx</u>

4.6.4 No Source Code - Add Password

If you don't have a Source Code and you want to add a <u>password</u>, then you could use the EXE packer - RLPACK - <u>http://www.reversinglabs.com/</u>.

It encrypts the EXE file and allows to specify a password, which is passed from Multimedia Player to the encrypted EXE file. You need at least version 1.2.1 of RLPACK.

Step 1 - Encrypt File and add Password

Encrypt your EXE file and add a password. Find below settings, which should work for most applications but you have to test it thoroughly with your application.

170

RLPack - FullEdition	
Reversing Labs Packer	Full Edition
Filename: C:\Program Files\Multimedia	Protector Premium\2.0\Dem Browse
Project and packing log New Open Save RLPack Full Edition 1.21, (c)2008 by R Licensed to: Mirage Computer System License type: Developer Version	
Packing Options A V Strip relocations [exe only] Strip export table Strip TLS V Don't strip unimportant resources	Pack progress and ratio Original size: Packed size: Ratio:
Preserve overlay WinLoader Raw resource(s): S	Folder
Protection Options Protect file from changeing [CRC]	Sign packed file RLP_SIGNATURE_ID_001 E R
Use Mutex RLPack Protect from generic unpackers	Select compression algorithm Compression: aPLib 0.43
✓ In Define on protection ✓ Er Password protection	Insert Fake Signature Fake signature: None 🔻
Password IJVw31ToTQL1QYt	Select RLPack stub type RLPack stub: Full Edition
Download missing .dll file(s) from: http://www.reversinglabs.com/	Set Password Options Go
Make Backup ? Pack	Restore About Exit

Define a password as recommended in the chapter - <u>define password for EXE file</u> [163]. Click on the **P button** to specify password options. Select: **Do not save the password on user computer!**

RLPack - Password options				
Reversing Labs Packe	if n			
Password protection options				
O not save the password on	user computer!			
Save the password on user computer [for all users]				
Save the password on user computer [for current user]				
Ask the user what to do!	Warn about saveing!			
	Save Cancel			

Click on the **options button** an define Protection options.

RLPack - Options	
Reversing Labs Packer	
Protection options General options	
Protection options AntiAttach protection AntiDebugging protection AntiMonitoring protection AntiDumping protection Advanced AntiDump protection Advanced Import Redirection Advanced Import Redirection Use safe Import Elimination Protection Convert OEP to Virtual Machine Thread Local Storage protection Allow multiple running copies Do not display detection messages	instructions
Use Smart file CRC checking	
Sav	/e Cancel

Step 2 - Import the EXE File

Import the EXE file and specify a **command line parameter**. The command line parameter for RLPack needs a special format - It must begin with **/PWD** followed by the password.

actor Dramium 12 01 Dars - J-t-1	cale deade	der Read Files fr	em Felder	Define as starting file	
ector Premium \2.0 \Demodata \	саіс-гіраск	Read Files m		Define as starting file	
Select Data Folder		Refresh Sele	ected Files	Delete	
	Media File			State	
w to protect?	calc.exe			new	
udio / Music					
(E Files					
ages / Photos					
F Files					
T Files					
leos					
ord Documents					
<u>ML</u>					
v to use a menu?					
vanced Menu					
sic Menu					
		Password	ł		
		must begin with	<u></u>		
	Command line par	ameter for EXE file	/PWD r 1nBLCV 1rZLZI0Y	yG7J1BiGNc2cLtZg21pfxm1nv9Jl2f3	34fs2ajVw31ToT
	-				
Settings		Image	Player Options		Administration

٩

MIRAGE MAKES NO REPRESENTATION, WARRANTY, OR GUARANTY AS TO THE RELIABILITY, TIMELINESS, QUALITY, SUITABILITY, TRUTH, AVAILABILITY, ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE SOFTWARE MENTIONED IN THIS TUTORIAL. MIRAGE DOES NOT REPRESENT OR WARRANT THAT (A) THE USE OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE SECURE, TIMELY, UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE OR OPERATE IN COMBINATION WITH ANY OTHER HARDWARE, SOFTWARE, SYSTEM OR DATA, (B) THE SOFTWARE WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS OR EXPECTATIONS, (C) ERRORS OR DEFECTS WILL BE CORRECTED, OR (D) THE SOFTWARE IS FREE OF VIRUSES OR OTHER HARMFUL COMPONENTS.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED TO YOU STRICTLY ON AN "AS IS" BASIS. ALL CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS, ARE HEREBY DISCLAIMED TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW BY MIRAGE.

4.6.5 Read Configuration Data

If the main application is an EXE file, the application should work without any modifications. Only if the EXE files writes configuration files, which should be available after the next program start, a modification could be necessary.

Test your application. If the application writes configuration files typically on the installation folder, this folder is not visible any more to the EXE file while it is running. The folder name can be retrieved reading a text or XML file.

The Multimedia Player provides a file *mp-config.xml* and *mp-config.txt*. Both files have the same content. Just read the file with the format your application can handle.

The files provide the following information.

■ mp-config.xml

It is an XML file.

<Install-Path-MMF> - path where the mmf file (database) can be found <Install-Path-Player> - installation path of the application <Player-Name> - name of the Multimedia Player, e.g. myapp.exe <MMF-Name> - name of the mmf file, e.g. myappdata.mmf <StartExe> - name of the start file, e.g. yoursource.exe

■ mp-config.txt

It is standard Windows INI file.

[Default] - Section Name you have to specify if you read an parameter Install-Path-MMF - path where the mmf file (database) can be found Install-Path-Player - installation path of the application Player-Name - name of the Multimedia Player, e.g. myapp.exe MMF-Name - name of the mmf file, e.g. myappdata.mmf StartExe - name of the start file, e.g. yoursource.exe

The variable Install-Path-Player provides you with the installation path of the application. This would be the folder where your application previously stored configuration files.

It is possible that the protected EXE file (variable Player-Name) has a different name like your original EXE file (variable StartExe.)

Use the name of the EXE file you want to protect as project filename [123]. Then the name of the protected EXE file has the same filename like your original application.

174

4.6.6 EXE protection with extensive requirements

You can use Multimedia Protector $\underline{\mathsf{EXE Protection}}_{166}$, if you do **not** have one of the following requirements

- No modules only one application which has to be licensed
- No floating / concurrent user license
- Maximum security and flexibility of the licensing
- Transferring a license from PC A to PC B

These additional requirements are covered with Licence Protector source code integration product - see website <u>www.Licence-Protector.com</u> for details and download the trial version.

• For protection with Licence Protector you need the Source Code and development work is necessary.

4.7 Files which can be protected

The Multimedia Player supports **SWF** (Macromedia Flash) files, **FLV**, **JPEG**, **MP3** native and other file types by converting these files to flash.

At least one SWF, FLV or EXE file is needed. This file can start any video, music or image files which are supported by the standard flash players.

Before you can <u>import</u> be file, it has to be converted into one of the native supported formats.



4.7.1 Native Protection

176

These files can be encrypted without conversion.

- <u>SWF</u> 176 (flash)
- FLV 176 (video)
- JPEG [176] (image) free photo album [144] included
- MP3 [177] (music) free music player [141] included
- <u>Executables</u> 165 (exe file)

4.7.1.1 SWF (Flash)

The flash format (.swf) is the main format which is used by Multimedia Protector.

Flash files running in the flash player 8.0 are supported. They can be directly imported [83]

1 A sample for flash file protection is provided with *flash-demo.mme*

4.7.1.2 FLV (Video)

The FLV format is a format that can be directly used by <u>importing</u> the file. If you have an application which uses FLV and the files are not displayed, convert the FLV file to SWF using <u>http://www.moyea.com</u>

AVI, MPEG, Quicktime and other formats can be converted - see details 179.

• At this time only **one** FLV video can be played per MMF file. The video will play only on a PC, not on a CD / DVD recorder connected to TV. Streaming is not supported. For Trouble Shooting see also - <u>FLV file does not load</u> [301]

If you have multiple FLV files to secure then:

- Save each FLV file in a separate database This feature can be used if you <u>split the</u> project into several databases. 305
- Use one of the menus Multimedia Protector provides (Advanced Menu, Basic Menu) or any other menu like <u>CDMenuPro</u> 284 or <u>Quick Menu Builder</u>. 286

A sample for flash file protection is provided with flv.mme

4.7.1.3 JPG (Photo / Image)

To use JPG files, they have to be played by a flash file. A free flash <u>Photo Album</u> [144] is provided. Otherwise, any .swf file allowing to display JPG files can be used like the free versions from <u>Airtight</u> [150].

• A sample for jpg files with a photo-album is provided with *photo-album1-demo.mme* and *photo-album2-demo.mme*.

© 2008 Mirage Computer Systems GmbH

For more details see chapter Photo Album 144.

4.7.1.4 MP3 (Music)

To use MP3 files, they have to be played by a flash music player. A free flash <u>music</u> <u>player</u> [14] is provided. Otherwise, any .swf file allowing to play mp3 files can be used.

1 A sample for mp3 files with the player is provided - use *mp3-demo.mme*.

The audio files will play only on a PC and not not on a CD / DVD recorder or mp3 player.

4.7.1.5 EXE Files

Details see chapter - Executables (exe file)

4.7.1.6 PowerPoint using PPT Viewer

By default, PowerPoint Viewer is installed when you install PowerPoint, so that you can use the Viewer with the **Package a Presentation for CD** feature. Otherwise you can download the Viewer from the Microsoft Website. Just search in the Online help of PowerPoint how to download the Viewer.

There are 3 steps to protect the PowerPoint presentation.

Create a Presentation for CD

The following description refers to PowerPoint 2007 but the required steps should be similar for other PowerPoint versions.

- On the Microsoft Office Button, point to the arrow next to Publish, and then click **Package for CD**
- In the Package for CD dialog box, in the Name the CD box, type a **name** for the CD presentation
- Click **Options**. Under Package type, you must select: **Viewer Package (update file formats to run in PowerPoint Viewer**), and then select an option in *how presentations will play in the viewer list*
- To ensure that files that are linked to your presentation are included in the package, select the Linked files check box
- **Specify a password for modify/edit** (password to open the file should be empty). This adds just additional security
- Click **OK** to close the Options dialog box
- Click Copy to Folder, enter a folder name and location, and then click OK.

Create a new folder where you only store the files for this project

Import the files

Now <u>import</u> all the files from the project folder you created and mark **pptview.exe as startfile** using the button **Define as starting file.** A red icon signals the start file.

The import screen would show the following files if you are using PowerPoint 2007.

🧕 Multimedia Protector - ppts	ample [C:\kundendaten\eigene testprojekte\ppt\pptsar	nple.mme]		00
Data Impo Enter the path of the folder or cli C: \kundendaten \MP-Projekte \eig Select Data Folder	ck on Select Data Folder	Defin	e as starting file	
	Media File	Sta	te	
How to protect?	🔷 autorun.inf	ref	resh	
	flickanimation.avi	ref	resh	
Audio / Music	🔷 intldate.dll	ref	resh	
EXE Files	microsoft.vc80.crt.manifest	ref	resh	
Images / Photos	In the system of	ref	resh	
	Implementation with the second		resh	
PDF Files	msvcr80.dll		resh	
PPT Files	🔷 ogl.dll		resh	
Videos	packandgo.zip	ner		
Word Documents	Play.bat		resh	
HTML	 playlist.txt ppt-sound-film.ppt 		resh	
	ppt-sound-nim.ppt		resh	
How to use a menu?	pptview.exe manifest		resh	
	ppvwintl.dll		resh	
Advanced Menu	pvreadme.htm	ref	resh	
Basic Menu	saext.dll	ref	resh	
	Command line parameter for EXE file			
Settings	Image	Player Options	Administration	
License Information	Data Import	Save		0

The project can contain multiple PPT files as long as they are linked - e.g. PPT file1 has a link to PPT file 2

If you have multiple PPT files, which are not linked, we recommend making a menu in PowerPoint (just a presentation with one slide) and link to each presentation. You can then pack all presentations in one database. If the size of all presentations exceed 100 MB, you have to <u>split the project into several databases</u> [305] (one project for each PPT file) and use a different <u>menu</u> [273]. Otherwise, the time to load the presentation would take too long.

The PowerPoint Viewer is started using the command line **/S /L "playlist.txt"**. You could specify a different command line in the field *Command line parameter for EXE file*.

See also

PowerPoint - different protection options 186

4.7.2 Conversion necessary

The following file types need to be converted into <u>flash (SWF)</u> first, before they can be used within Multimedia Protector.

- AVI, MPEG, Quicktime, Windows Media Video
- <u>CHM</u> 181
- HTML 182
- MDI 183
- <u>PDF</u> 183
- <u>PPT</u> 186 (PowerPoint)
- WORD, VISIO, Office Documents 194
- Word with Hyperlinks
- <u>WAV</u> 193

\bullet

MIRAGE MAKES NO REPRESENTATION, WARRANTY, OR GUARANTY AS TO THE RELIABILITY, TIMELINESS, QUALITY, SUITABILITY, TRUTH, AVAILABILITY, ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE SOFTWARE MENTIONED IN THIS TUTORIAL. MIRAGE DOES NOT REPRESENT OR WARRANT THAT (A) THE USE OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE SECURE, TIMELY, UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE OR OPERATE IN COMBINATION WITH ANY OTHER HARDWARE, SOFTWARE, SYSTEM OR DATA, (B) THE SOFTWARE WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS OR EXPECTATIONS, (C) ERRORS OR DEFECTS WILL BE CORRECTED, OR (D) THE SOFTWARE IS FREE OF VIRUSES OR OTHER HARMFUL COMPONENTS.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED TO YOU STRICTLY ON AN "AS IS" BASIS. ALL CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS, ARE HEREBY DISCLAIMED TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW BY MIRAGE.

4.7.2.1 AVI, MPEG, Quicktime, Windows Media Video

A lot of formats can be converted and then protected by Multimedia Protector. You will find a lot of tools by searching in Google. We describe 2 tools more in detail.

1. The video will play only on a PC, not on a CD / DVD recorder connected to TV.

Convert to SWF

If you have multiple, small videos, we recommend converting the video to swf. A good tool that also adds **player controls** can be found at <u>http://www.moyea.com</u> (Moyea Flash Video MX).

- Convert the file to swf
- Import the file as and set the swf file as start file
- If you have multiple video files to secure, use the Menu Creator 273.

See details for <u>converting with Moyea</u> 39.

Convert to FLV

Using the free Riva FLV encoder, AVI, MPEG, Quicktime and Windows Media Video can be converted to FLV.

Download Riva FLV encoder: <u>http://rivavx.de/index.php?id=483&L=3</u>

- Convert the file to FLV
- Import the file as start file
- If you have multiple video files to secure, use the Menu Creator 273.

Convert AVI to SWF using swftools

If you want to use the SWF format for videos, use a tool which converts the file to SWF. After converting the file, just $\frac{\text{import}}{100}$ it and define it as a the starting file. If you need multiple AVI files to distribute, use the $\frac{\text{menu generator}}{100}$.

Swftools is a collection of SWF manipulation and creation utilities - and it is free (released under GPL) - www.swftools.com.

Download the Windows Version swftools-0.7.0.exe at http://www.swftools.org/download.html You find a online help on the swftools web site - but here are the most useful commands.

Program to convert AVI to SWF: **avi2swf.exe** - online help: <u>http://www.swftools.org/</u> <u>avi2swf.html</u>

Standard Conversion

This converts a single AVI file.

avi2swf.exe file.avi

or if you .SWF file should get a new name
avi2swf.exe file.avi -o filenew.swf

4.7.2.2 CHM

To secure a CHM file (help file) the Windows viewer for this file - **hh.exe** is used. By default, every Windows system should have this file installed.

There are 3 steps to protect the CHM file:

Copy the hh.exe viewer

Copy the viewer for the chm file, the file **hh.exe** from c:\windows to your project folder where you saved the CHM file.

The hh.exe from a Vista machine will not run on XP but the version from XP will run on Vista machines. If you want to support NT you have to make tests which hh.exe will run on all operating systems.

🕚 It is not in the liability of Mirage if you may distribute this file or not.

Copy the start application

To run with Multimedia Protector, a special start application is needed. Copy the file **startchm.exe** and the configuration **file chm.ini** from the Multimedia Protector installation folder ...**tools\chm** to your project folder where you saved the CHM file.

Now add the name of your chmfile in the chm.ini file. You can use any text editor to modify this file.

[Filename] chmfile=**test.chm** (change the name here)

The folder contains now all files which are:

- hh.exe
- startchm.exe and chm.ini
- your chm file

Name
🕘 chm.ini
😵 hh.exe
startchm.EXE
g test.cnm
Directory
with chm
files and
nies anu

other files to import

Import the files

Now import all the files from the project folder you created and mark startchm.exe as

startfile using the button Define as starting file. A red icon signals the start file.

The import screen would show the following files.

🧕 Multimedia Protector - chmsan	nple [C:\kundendater	\eigene testprojekte\	chmtest\chmsampl	e.mme]			00
Data Import	ŀ						
Data Import							
Enter the path of the folder or click of	on Select Data Folder						
C: \kundendaten \MP-Projekte \eigene	e testpi	Read Files from	Folder	D	efine as starting fi	e	
Select Data Folder		Refresh Selecte	d Files		Delete		
	Media File				State		_
How to protect?	🛷 chm.ini				ok		_
	hh.exe				ok		
<u>Audio / Music</u>	startchm.exe				ok		
EXE Files	🛷 test.chm				ok		
Images / Photos							
PDF Files							
PPT Files							
<u>Videos</u>							
Word Documents							
HTML							
How to use a menu?							
Advanced Menu							
Basic Menu							
	Use advanced menu	1					
	Note: All imported files	are extracted at runtime	on a temporary folder				
Settings	Ima	age	Player Opt	ions)	Administ	ration
Licence Information	Data 1	Import	Save)		0

4.7.2.3 HTML

Pure HTML files can not be protected directly. There are 2 options depending on the way you are using the HTML files.

Protect html files

If you have a project with HTML files only, you need a tool which compresses all HTML files in one single EXE file like <u>HTML Executable</u> 42° or <u>http://www.ebookcompiler.com/</u>, which comes with an own Viewer. Multimedia Protector now provides licensing and copy protection options. Just import the EXE file - see <u>Secure standalone exe file</u> 106°

The HTML files are protected with the same security level like EXE files

Protect flash project which includes some html files

If the protection of the flash file is the main issue and HTML files should just be invoked, <u>import all files</u> (including the HTML files).

In your flash code you have to add special commands:

- Extract all files from the encrypted database to a temporary folder with the command: <u>http://FILE:testfile.html\$\$COPY</u>. You have to use this command for each html file
- Start the first HTML file with the command <u>http://FILE:default.html\$\$START</u>

10 The HTML files are loaded into the Browser and they are not protected

For all commands see - Flash application using EXE files 167

4.7.2.4 MDI

There are 2 options to use MDI files

- Use the Flashpaper printer driver like described for <u>Word Documents</u> 194 protected documents can be printed
- Convert it to PDF like described in <u>PDF conversion</u> [184] printing can be enabled or disabled
- Convert it to JPG see <u>JPG files</u> [176]

4.7.2.5 PDF

There are several ways to convert PDF files. After converting the file, just <u>import</u> as it and define it as a the starting file. If you need multiple PDF files to distribute, use the <u>menu</u> <u>generator</u> [273] to select the files within a menu.

PDF Conversion Tool

We recommend using pdf2swf which offers a lot of functionality and is free. It also offers a batch conversion of pdf files, so you can convert all files in a directory and subdirectory into a batch process. The navigation bar to browse the PDF file is provided with the Advanced Menu^[274].

Details: PDF conversion 184

Download a sample - the Multimedia Protector Tutorial with over 200 pages and links inside the PDF document - converted with swftools and using the Advanced Menu -<u>Click here to download</u> and unzip the file to a folder. Start mp-pdf.exe.

Using a Printer Driver

This option allows printing the secure file, but links within the PDF file will be lost. It adds a nice navigation bar. The user can select and copy text but the format is lost.

For details using a printer driver see converting <u>Office Documents</u>. The printer does not support hyperlinks. If you need hyperlinks, use the PDF Conversion tool instead.

Not all options of a PDF file are supported. The converted version is like an image of the PDF file. It does not support filling out forms or any other active content including bookmarks.

Download a sample - the Multimedia Protector Tutorial with over 200 pages and links inside the PDF document - converted with Flashpaper - <u>Click here to download</u> and unzip the file to a folder. Start mp-flashpaper.exe.

See also

PDF conversion 184 Office Documents - disable printing 186

1 Interactive PDF files with forms can not be converted.

4.7.2.5.1 PDF Conversion to Flash

We describe one tool more in detail. It is it is free (<u>released under GPL</u>) - <u>www.swftools.org</u> and comes already installed with Multimedia Protector.

Step 1 - Batch file conversion

It is possible to convert all PDF files on a folder and all subfolders in a batch process.

- Copy all your PDF files to the folder ..\Multimedia Protector\2.0\converter\swftools
- Start convertpdf-batch.bat. It converts all files to flash
- As a result of the conversion, a file with the extension .swf is created. It has the same name like the PDF file

O The PDF file **may not be password protected** - all security settings must be set to none for the PDF file to allow a conversion.

Step 2 - Add a menu and navigation toolbar

If you have only one pdf file, then rename the file to **doc.swf** (first delete the sample file doc.swf)

Use the <u>Advanced Menu</u> 274 as described below, if you have multiple PDF files. This adds

a menu structure.

Create Menu

Adding a toolbar (browse, zoom, print)

The toolbar for the converted PDF file is provided by the Advanced Menu 2741.

If you have just one PDF file then use the files provided in the folder ... \converter\swftools. You need 3 files for your project:

- Advanced-menu.swf
- config.xml
- doc.swf

Rename your converted PDF file to docu.swf and <u>import</u> all files. Select the file advanced-menu.swf as start file and check the option: *Use advanced menu*. It will add browse buttons to navigate to the next page and a scroll bar to scroll through the page.

Muttimedia Protect	or + FOF Sample	
	Martingen Protector Martingen Martin	
	Multimedia Protector	
	© 2007 Mroge Computer Systems GmbH	

View PDF file with toolbar

It is possible to change different settings.

Add a Print Button

To add a print button edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free $\frac{\text{XML Editor}}{258}$) and change the entry **<print>** to *True*.



Disable Zoom In / Out

To disable the zoom option, edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free \underline{XML} <u>Editor</u> and change the entry **<zoom>** to *false*.



Start with different size By default, the converted PDF is loaded with 100%. It is possible to start the

document with another size like 150% or 75%. Edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free $\underline{XML \ Editor}$ and change the entry <**zoomin**> to eg. 150 (without % sign).

Download a sample - the Multimedia Protector Tutorial with over 200 pages and links inside the PDF document - converted with swftools and using the Advanced Menu - <u>Click here to download</u> and unzip the file to a folder. Start mp-pdf.exe.

Step 3 - Import Files

After converting all files to flash, copy only the **flash files (swf**) and the **menu files** (advanced-menu.swf, config.xml) to a new directory, which you would <u>import</u>.

The file advanced-menu.swf must be selected as start file.

Note: As required by the license of this tool, the source code is also installed and can be found on the folder .. \converter\swftools\source

4.7.2.5.2 PDF - Disable Printing

To disable printing in a project:

- Uncheck Enable Flash configuration in the screen Player Options
- If you are using the <u>Advanced Menu</u> (which is recommended because of the options it offers to view the document), set <u>print to false</u> (276) in the config.xml file.

4.7.2.6 **PowerPoint (PPT)**

There are two different approaches to protect Powerpoint files.

Using the PowerPoint Viewer

Using the PowerPoint Viewer is easy to handle and adds the same protection level like protecting EXE files [165]. The PowerPoint Viewer is provided for free and is included in the main PowerPoint installation.



- All animations including video and audio are supported
- No conversion necessary
- PowerPoint Viewer is free
- One PPT can invoke another PPT (Link from PPT A to PPB tested with Office 2007)

_

- Not the same strong protection level like a converted flash file will offer
- No menu can be added to select different presentations
- As all files have to be extracted from a database, the size for the project should not

exceed 100 MB. You can protect multiple PPT files with each 100 MB in size by splitting the project into several databases 305

- Printing can not be disabled (always enabled)
- Macros inside PPT are not supported

PPT Conversion to Flash

The PPT files can be converted into flash and therefore are protected with the highest security level, which Multimedia Protector offers for flash files. 25

÷

- Highest protection level
- A <u>menu</u> ²⁷³ can be used to start different presentations
- The size of the complete project does not matter as files are loaded into memory only when required
- Printing can be enabled or disabled

_

- Some special animation effects will not work with converters
- The file has to be converted
- The converter is not free
- Macros inside PPT are not supported

<u>What is the difference between Multimedia Protector and the Microsoft IRM</u> (Information Rights Management) system in Office 2007?

The IRM system in Office 2007 allows to specify security options per user. You need a server to handle the user information and each user must install the IRM Client on his PC. This is typically a possible approach to protect a document inside the own company. If the document should be distributed, the restrictions to have a connection to the IRM server and to install the IRM client should be considered. Multimedia Protector protects PPT files without the need to install an additional software or to have an Internet connection.

See also

Use PowerPoint Viewer

PPT - Disable Printing 186

4.7.2.6.1 Use PowerPoint Viewer

By default, PowerPoint Viewer is installed when you install PowerPoint, so that you can use the Viewer with the **Package a Presentation for CD** feature. Otherwise you can download the Viewer from the Microsoft Website. Just search in the Online help of PowerPoint how to download the Viewer.

There are 3 steps to protect the PowerPoint presentation.

Create a Presentation for CD

The following description refers to PowerPoint 2007 but the required steps should be similar for other PowerPoint versions.

- On the Microsoft Office Button, point to the arrow next to Publish, and then click **Package for CD**
- In the Package for CD dialog box, in the Name the CD box, type a **name** for the CD presentation
- Click **Options**. Under Package type, you must select: **Viewer Package (update file formats to run in PowerPoint Viewer**), and then select an option in *how presentations will play in the viewer list*
- To ensure that files that are linked to your presentation are included in the package, select the Linked files check box
- **Specify a password for modify/edit** (password to open the file should be empty). This adds just additional security
- Click **OK** to close the Options dialog box
- Click Copy to Folder, enter a folder name and location, and then click OK.

Create a new folder where you only store the files for this project

Import the files

Now <u>import</u> all the files from the project folder you created and mark **pptview.exe as startfile** using the button **Define as starting file.** A red icon signals the start file.

The import screen would show the following files if you are using PowerPoint 2007.

189

Multimedia Protector - ppt	tsample [C:\kundendaten\eigene testprojekte\ppt\pptsample.mme]	0
Data Impo ter the path of the folder or or Voundendaten VMP-Projekte \e Select Data Folder	dick on Select Data Folder	Define as starting file	
			_
	Media File	State	_
w to protect?	🔷 autorun.inf	refresh	
	🔷 flickanimation.avi	refresh	
idio / Music	Intldate.dll	refresh	
E Files	Interest Market Ma	refresh	
ages / Photos	Insvcm80.dll	refresh	
	Insvcp80.dll	refresh	
F Files	Insver80.dll	refresh	
T Files	🔷 ogl.dll	refresh	
<u>deos</u>	I packandgo.zip	new	
ord Documents	🔷 play.bat	refresh	
	Ilaylist.txt	refresh	
<u>ML</u>	Image: Sound-film.ppt	refresh	
w to use a menu?	I pptview.exe	refresh	
w to use a menu?	Interpretension of the second	refresh	
lvanced Menu	I ppvwintl.dll	refresh	
	International Action of the Ac	refresh	
<u>sic Menu</u>	saext.dll	refresh	
	Command line parameter for EXE file		
Settings	Image Player Opti	ons Administrat	ion
License Information	Data Import Save		

The project can contain multiple PPT files as long as they are linked - e.g. PPT file1 has a link to PPT file 2

If you have multiple PPT files, which are not linked, we recommend making a menu in PowerPoint (just a presentation with one slide) and link to each presentation. You can then pack all presentations in one database. If the size of all presentations exceed 100 MB, you have to split the project into several databases with a project for each PPT file) and use a different menu 273. Otherwise, the time to load the presentation would take too long.

The PowerPoint Viewer is started using the command line **/S /L "playlist.txt"**. You could specify a different command line in the field *Command line parameter for EXE file*.

See also

PowerPoint - different protection options 186

4.7.2.6.2 PPTConversion to Flash

190

There are a lot of PPT conversion tools available with different pricing and different conversion options. Find your favorite tool at http://www.masternewmedia.org/2004/04/14/powerpoint to flash conversion tools.htm

We recommend using a tool which generates one singe SWF file and not a file per PPT slide like <u>http://www.wondershare.com</u> (PPT2Flash), <u>http://www.presentationpro.com/</u> or <u>http://www.cpslabs.net</u>

If you have PPT documents you want to convert, perform the following steps:

- 1. Convert PPT to flash using a PPT converter that supports hyperlinks
- 2. If you have multiple, large videos convert it to SWF see video conversion 179
- 3. After converting all files to flash, copy only the flash files to a new directory which you would import so
- 4. Use the <u>Advanced Menu</u> as described below if the PowerPoint converter does **not** support a navigation toolbar (most of the converters will add such a navigation bar automatically)

■ Using Advainced Menu to add a navigation toolbar

Adding a toolbar (browse, zoom, print)

The toolbar for the converted PPT file is provided by the Advanced Menu 274.

If you have just **one** PPT file then use the files provided in the folder ... \converter\swftools. You need 3 files for your project:

- Advanced-menu.swf
- config.xml
- doc.swf

Rename your converted PPT file to docu.swf and <u>import</u> all files. Select the file advanced-menu.swf as start file and check the option: *Use advanced menu*. It will add browse buttons to navigate to the next page and a scroll bar to scroll through the page.

Mutanella Potector - PDF Sangle) भे, बे, बे, प्	
Minimum Protocolor Minimum Min	
Multimedia Protector	
© 2007 Mingar Computer Systems Grief	

View PPT file with toolbar

It is possible to change different settings.

Add a Print Button

To add a print button edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free $\frac{\text{XML Editor}}{\text{Z58}}$) and change the entry **<print>** to *True*.



Disable Zoom In / Out

To disable the zoom option, edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free \underline{XML} <u>Editor</u> [258]) and change the entry **<zoom>** to *false*.



■ Start with different size

By default, the converted PPT is loaded with 100%. It is possible to start the document with another size like 150% or 75%. Edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free $\underline{XML \ Editor}$ and change the entry <**zoomin**> to eg. 150 (without % sign).

4.7.2.6.2.1 PPT with Hyperlink

Hyperlinks are supported with the <u>PowerPoint Viewer</u> without any special considerations.

Using a Flash Conversion tool

There are a lot of PPT conversion tools available with different pricing and different conversion options. Find your favorite tool at http://www.masternewmedia.org/2004/04/14/powerpoint_to_flash_conversion_tools.htm

We recommend using a tool which generates one singe SWF file and not a file per PPT slide like <u>http://www.wondershare.com</u> (PPT2Flash), <u>http://www.presentationpro.com/</u> or <u>http://www.cpslabs.net</u>

If you have PPT documents with Hyperlinks, perform the following steps:

- 1. Convert PPT to flash using a PPT converter that supports hyperlinks
- 2. After converting all files to flash, copy only the flash files to a new directory which you would <u>import</u> as .
- 3. Set the option: Converting hyperlinks after SWF ending
- 4. If you use relative paths (links like\path1\file1.pdf), set the option: <u>Always use</u> relative path ar
- 5. Use the Advanced Menu 274 as described below

A Hyperlink must not contain an umlaut (äüö) or any other special characters like %\$

Adding a toolbar (browse, zoom, print)

The toolbar for the converted PPT file is provided by the Advanced Menu 274.

If you have just **one** PPT file then use the files provided in the folder ..\converter\swftools. You need 3 files for your project:

- Advanced-menu.swf
- config.xml
- doc.swf

Rename your converted PPT file to docu.swf and <u>import</u> all files. Select the file advanced-menu.swf as start file and check the option: *Use advanced menu*. It will add browse buttons to navigate to the next page and a scroll bar to scroll through the page.

*્વ્ ્	- PDF Songle	
	Protector	
	Multimedia Protector	

View PPT file with toolbar

It is possible to change different settings.

Add a Print Button

To add a print button edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free $\frac{\text{XML Editor}}{258}$) and change the entry **print** to *True*.



Disable Zoom In / Out

To disable the zoom option, edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free \underline{XML} <u>Editor</u> and change the entry <**zoom**> to *false*.



Start with different size

By default, the converted PPT is loaded with 100%. It is possible to start the document

with another size like 150% or 75%. Edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free $\underline{XML \ Editor}$ and change the entry <**zoomin**> to eg. 150 (without % sign).

4.7.2.6.3 PPT - Disable Printing

To disable printing in a project:

- Uncheck Enable Flash configuration in the screen Player Options 85
- If you are using the <u>Advanced Menu</u> (which is recommended because of the options it offers to view the document), set <u>print to false</u> [276] in the config.xml file.

4.7.2.7 WAV

After converting the file, just \underline{import} at and define it as a the starting file. If you need multiple WAV files to distribute, use the <u>menu generator</u> 273.

WAV Conversion Tool

You will find a lot of tools by searching in Google. We describe one tool more in detail. It is a collection of SWF manipulation and creation utilities - and it is free (released under GPL) - www.swftools.com .

Download the Windows Version swftools-0.7.0.exe at <u>http://www.swftools.org/download.html</u> You find a online help on the swftools web site - but here are the most useful commands.

Program to convert PDF to SWF: **wav2swf.exe** - online help: <u>http://www.swftools.org/</u> wav2swf.html

Standard Conversion

This converts a single WAV file.

wav2swf.exe file.wav

or if you .SWF file should get a new name

wav2swf.exe -o filenew.swf file.wav

194

4.7.2.8 WORD, VISIO, EXCEL, Office Documents

All documents that are **printable**, like Word, Visio, Excel, can be converted into flash with a printer driver. It is called Macromedia FlashPaper2 and can be downloaded and bought at the Macromedia Website <u>http://www.macromedia.com/software/flashpaper/</u>.

The printer driver creates a flash file with an own tool bar, which allows **navigating through the file and printing the file**. It is easy to use, but hyperlinks will be removed.

If you do not want to allow printing the content, see - Office Documents - disable printing 186

Instead of using the printer driver, **Word files or other office documents** can be saved as PDF - see <u>PDF conversion</u> [184] - which offers more options like the printer driver method.

After converting the file, just \underline{import}_{83} it and define it as a the starting file. If you need multiple office documents to distribute, use the $\underline{menu \ generator}_{273}$.

If Excel has VB macros or formula, you need a source code integration with Licence Protector - see <u>www.Licence-Protector.com</u> or contact <u>sales@mirage-systems.de</u> for an Excel Add-in.

Download a sample - the Multimedia Protector Tutorial with over 200 pages and links inside the PDF document - converted with Flashpaper - <u>Click here to download</u> and unzip the file to a folder. Start mp-flashpaper.exe.

1 you use flashpaper and need a menu, you have to use the Basic Menu 2001.

See also

Word with Hyperlink 194 Office Documents - disable printing 186

4.7.2.8.1 Word with Hyperlink

Word 2007 comes with a free Add-In, which creates a PDF file and it supports hyperlinks. Just select File, Save As PDF. If this option is missing, you can <u>download the Add-In</u> <u>here</u> or search in the Word Online help for PDF.

Some PDF Converters have inbuilt support for Hyperlinks. If you use a converter, which does not support it, you can use the freeware tool PDF-T-Maker.

PDF T-Maker

Word Documents with Hyperlinks to other Word Documents need a special converter. This converter is a plug-in in Word and creates a Postscript file with hyperlinks. Technically, there are these steps:

- 1. Create Postscript file with PDF-T-Maker
- 2. Create PDF file, using the Postscript file, with any PDF tool. This step can be done automatically after step 1
- 3. Convert PDF to flash using PDF2SWF 1841
- 4. After converting all files to flash, copy only the flash files to a new directory which you would import as
- 5. If you use relative paths (links like\path1\file1doc), set the option: <u>Always use</u> relative path 37

You can download the converter here: <u>http://www.transcom.de/transcom/en/2004_pdf-t-maker.htm</u>

After installing the plug-in in Word, you have to configure it:

- General Tab. Check: Convert Cross document links, thereby convert .doc in filename into .swf
- Default Postscript Printer: If you do not have a printer installed, either find one on the web page described in the pdf-t-maker documentation or install one that comes with Windows (e.g. **Brother HL-2400C BR SCRIPT2** use LPT3 to print as a virtual device)
- Default Destiller TAB: If you have Acrobat installed, define Acrodist.exe or the distiller of your PDF tool. If you do not have any PDF tool, download PDF creator: <u>http://www.pdfforge.org/products/pdfcreator/</u>

If you need a batch conversion, e.g. conversion of all files on a specific subdirectory, please contact <u>www.transcom.de</u> and ask for the batch conversion option.

🕚 A Hyperlink may not contain an umlaut (äüö) or any other special characters like %\$

4.7.2.8.2 Office Documents - disable printing

To disable printing in a project:

- Uncheck Enable Flash configuration in the screen Player Options
- If you are using the <u>Advanced Menu</u> (which is recommended because of the options it offers to view the document), set <u>print to false</u> (276) in the config.xml file.

4.8 Flash Development

You can use any standard flash command in combination with Multimedia Protector. Find below some special enhancements or tips.

- <u>Read data from configuration files</u>
- Start EXE or BAT files 167
- Store data 197

196

• Start a specific file inside the database

4.8.1 Configuration Files

You can either have an XML file which you include in the flash project or you can store customer specific configuration values in an XML file, which is on the same folder like the protected database file (.mmf).

The flash command is: config_xml.load("config.xml");

4.8.2 Start EXE or BAT files

If you have a flash application that invokes exe files, the fscommand will be supported. It works as follows:

- Extract the file from the encrypted database to the hard disk to a hidden place
- Start the file
- The file is not removed after termination

In case you load files in your exe file, you have to be aware that these files have to be available on the new directory. You have to extract these files first from the database to the directory (see below). If your exe file creates new files, you should always create it on the same folder or subfolder - but never use a hard coded path.

If you have multiple files like configuration files, you can add special commands to your flash application. This gives you more control.

Use one of the following commands:

http://FILE:testfile.exe or http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$START

This command extracts the exe file from the database to a temporary folder and starts it. The file must be an exe file. The Multimedia Player is still activated. When the Multimedia Player is closed, it tries to **delete the exe file**. This is only possible if the exe file was terminated - if it is still running it cannot be deleted.

http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$STARTKEEP

Same as parameter \$\$START, but does **NOT delete** the exe file after termination.

http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$COPY

Just extracts the file from the database, but do not start it. This command can be used with any file type like DLL or txt. If you need multiple files (e.g. not only exe files but also dlls or configuration files), you can first extract all these files and at the end start the main exe file using http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$START. When the Multimedia Player is closed, it tries to delete all extracted files.

http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$COPYKEEP

Same as parameter **\$\$COPY**, but does **NOT delete** the exe file after termination

You can add a pathname where you want to extract the files, in case you do not want to use the temporary folder.

Sample: loadMovie("http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$COPYKEEP\$\$c:\mypath\testfile.exe",2)

would extract the file testfile.exe from the database to the folder c:\mypath

http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$RUN

This commands starts an exe file which is already available on the CD or hard disk. It can be used to start any external application. The file is not deleted after termination. The file must be on the same folder like the **Multimedia Player**. A pathname cannot be used.

Sample: loadMovie("http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$RUN",2);

 ${f 0}$ The http://FILE: command also works with HTML and BAT files.

Invoke a BATCH file

You can invoke a .BAT file to perform any type of tasks. The .bat file must be on the same folder as the player. With a batch file you could e.g. invoke a huge AVI file, which will then be played in the default player.

Command: loadMovie("http://FILE:avistart.bat\$\$RUN",2)

The avistart.bat needs only the name of the avi file:

sample.avi

4.8.3 Store Data

If your application needs to temporarily store data (e.g. results of a test), use the local shared object functionality.

A local A local shared-object is stored on the user's machine. Depending on the operating system it is e.g.

- for Windows XP: Documents and Settings\userName\Application Data\Macromedia\Flash Player\#SharedObjects
- for Vista: \Users\userName\AppData\Roaming\Macromedia\Flash Player\#SharedObjects

Example

// Create a shared-object named "userData"
mySharedObject=SharedObject.getLocal("userData");

4.8.4 Start a specific file inside the database

If you have a menu application as an EXE file, it might be useful, to start a specific flash file inside the database. The menu.exe file would be on the CD/disk (outside the database) and start each flash file individually.

Example - Start files are in the main folder

You have 3 flash files inside the database. All start files are in the main folder.

🧕 Multimedia Protector - courses	[C:\temp\courses.mme]			00
Data Import	:			
Enter the path of the folder or click o	n Select Data Folder			
C:\temp\flashproject	R	ead Files from Folder	Define as starting file	
Select Data Folder		efresh Selected Files	Delete	
	Media File		State	
How to protect?	🛷 file 1.swf		new	
Audio (Adusia	file2.swf		new	
Audio / Music EXE Files	🔷 file3.swf		new	
Images / Photos				
PDF Files				
PPT Files				
Videos				
Word Documents				
HTML				
How to use a menu?				
Advanced Menu				
Basic Menu				
	Use advanced menu			
Settings	Image	Player Op	otions	Administration
License Information	Data Import	Save	:	0

Import - 3 flash files - all in one folder

You have to specify one start file. This would be the file which is loaded when you start the Multimedia Player without any command.

The menu application could invoke each flash file individually. If the menu has an option *Lesson 1, Lesson 2, Lesson 3* then selecting option *Lesson 1* one would directly load file 1.

The command to load a file would be "mycourse.exe" -load "file1.swf"

Note: mycourse.exe is the name of the Multimedia Player. You could also specify a path "c:\programs\myapps\mycourse.exe" -load "file1.swf"

Example - Start file is in a sub folders

You have 3 flash files inside the database. The files are in separate folders.

🧕 Multimedia Protector - cours	es [C:\temp	\courses.mme]						00
Data Impol Enter the path of the folder or clic C:\temp\flashproject Select Data Folder		ata Folder	Read Files from Refresh Selecte		De	fine as starting file Delete		
How to protect? Audio / Music EXE Files Images / Photos PDF Files PT Files Videos Word Documents HTML How to use a menu? Advanced Menu Basic Menu	Course	le a1/file1.swf 22/file2.swf a3/file3.swf The files are in a subfolder vanced menu				State new new		
Settings		Image		Player Op	tions	(Adm	ninistration
License Information		Data Import		Save				0

Import - 3 flash files - files are in sub folders

If you start a flash file in a sub folder and this flash file also starts other flash files, you have to specify the option: **Always use relative Paths** in the <u>screen - Player Options</u> [87].

The command to load a file would be "mycourse.exe" -load "**course1**\file1.swf"

You can also specify an EXE file as the start file

See also Multimedia Player - Start Options 289

4.8.5 HTML Starter file

Often tools generate a *default.html* or *index.html* to start the flash application. This is not working with Multimedia Protector, as HTML files can not be used. Just edit the HTML file and search for a file with the extension .swf, which is the main starter file. The html file can then replaced with a special flash starter file.

• From ..\tools\flashstarter copy the files flashstarter.swf and configstarter.xml to the folder, where the default.html or index.html is locacted

🖭 configstarter.xml	09.04.2008 18:51
📷 flashstarter.swf	08.04.2008 12:32

- Edit the file configstarter.xml and add the folder\filename of the main flash file. You can also specify parameters
- Now import **ALL** and files (swf, html, js..) and make flashstarter.swf the start file.

Content of configstarter.xml

<!-- defines the folder and flash name the flashstarter.swf loads -->
<StartSwf>resources/gallery.swf</StartSwf>

<!-- the parameter for the flash application --> <Parameter>flash variables - parameter</Parameter>

The flashstarter.swf would invoke the gallery.swf in the subfolder resources with **resources/gallery.swf?flash variables**

4.9 Integration in Online Shops

Multimedia Protector offers a ready to go integration in the e-commerce shops of

- <u>Cleverbridge</u>²⁰¹ (<u>www.cleverbridge.com</u>)
- Element5/ShareIt 215 (www.element5.com , www.shareit.com)

It is possible to provide integration into other shops. Request information from support@mirage-systems.de.

The following description does not cover how to handle the setup for these e-commerce shops. It describes the necessary steps to combine Multimedia Protector with these shops.

4.9.1 About Shop Integration

Basically, you create a key list with Serial Numbers which are uploaded to the shop. After the order process, a Serial Number key from this key list is inserted in the order confirmation e-mail and the customer can download your protected multimedia file.

If you sell a <u>network license</u> where each order can contain a different quantity of licenses, it is not possible to work with uploaded keys. You have to create a Serial Number Key which is different per order and includes the quantity of licenses ordered.

Both scenarios are described for <u>cleverbridge</u> and <u>Element5 / Share-itl</u> 215.

4.9.2 Cleverbridge

The integration into the cleverbridge e-commerce system (<u>www.cleverbridge.com</u>) can be done without programming - just by defining the desired action.

These steps are necessary to integrate Multimedia Protector:

- Build a key list with Serial Numbers 201
- Upload Serial Numbers 202
- Define Delivery Text 204
- Upload Project Files 206
- Define Delivery Option 206

This workflow is intended for single user / PC license. The order process can allow ordering multiple single user licenses at a time. Per license, one Serial Number key is delivered.

If you sell a <u>network license</u> where each order can contain a different number of licenses, it is not possible to work with uploaded keys. You have to create a Serial Number Key which is different per order and includes the number of licenses ordered.

See chapter - Creating order specific Serial Numbers 207.

4.9.2.1 Build a key list with Serial Numbers

First you have to build a list with Serial Numbers which are uploaded to the shop. Depending on your sales, create 100 or 1000 Serial Number keys to upload.

Within the *Screen - Administration* create a list of Serial Numbers - for details see <u>Create</u> <u>Serial Number Key</u> . Save the key list to a file with **Save generated keys to file**.

Multimedia Protector - flash-demo [C:\Prog	ram Files\1.3\Demodata\fla	sh-demo.mme]		0
Administration				
Serial Number Unlocking with Copy Prot. Unlo	cking without Copy Prot. Addit	ional Licences		Keys
Additional days after applying Serial Number 3 Number of Users 2 V	Generate Key	Number of desir	ed Serial Numbers	ys Misc
9Q9PM-1EIH8-47J97-EX9wZ-INT8N-BuFDE zq9PT-1EIH8-47J9e-EX9wZ-XNT8N-BvFDo ID9Pr-1EIH8-47J9L-EX9wZ-1NT8N-BXFD3	Textbox with all generated Serial Numbers. The content of the textbox = can be saved to a file		Save Keylist to a file	
₩ use extended description			Save generated keys to file	
Settings	Image	Player Options	Administration	
Licence Information	Data Import	Save	J	0

4.9.2.2 Upload Serial Numbers

Start the cleverbridge *Commerce Assistant* and edit a product. In the TAB **Delivery Details** you specify which keys are delivered.

Press the button *Add* and select **Cleverbridge delivers key**. Then select **Key List** and press the button **S**.

Edit Product Licence Pro	tector Multimedia Edition Premium (13369)
Product ID 13369	
Status list in catego	ories and listings
Main Shopping Cart Description	ns Pictures Delivery Texts Prices Delivery Details
Running No	/ Delivery Type
	1 cleverbridge delivers key
	2 cleverbridge delivers full version by download
	3 cleverbridge delivers full version by download
3 Item(s) 1 Item(s) Selected	
- Options	
🔘 Web Key Generator	A 1
O Executable Key Generator	algshopnolic25.exe
💽 Key List	
Key Result Type	Html
Execute once per purchase	d quantity

Delivery Details - select Key List

Type in a name for the key list and press the **Add** button - select the key list with Serial Numbers you created - see build a key list with Serial Numbers 201

🍫 Add Key List	_		_		×
Name	Serial-Number-Pro	oduct Multimedia			
	_				
Only One Key Per					
Remark				^	
				$\overline{\mathbf{v}}$	
Items	Running No 🛛 7	Кеу	Purchase ID	^	Add
	2	TK9PL-1EIH8-47I9k-EX9wZ-kNT8N-Bk			
	3	j29PV-1EIH8-47I9I-EX9wZ-RNT8N-By			Paste
	4	qi9Pn-1EIH8-47I9C-EX9wZ-YNT8N-BA			
	5	ZZ9Pk-1EIH8-47I9p-EX9wZ-oNT8N-B			Delete
	6	c99PQ-1EIH8-47I9X-EX9wZ-INT8N-B			
	7	T09PE-1EIH8-47I9w-EX9wZ-RNT8N-B			
	8	Pf9PQ-1EIH8-47I9q-EX9wZ-CNT8N-B			
	9	ux9PQ-1EIH8-47I9D-EX9wZ-ANT8N-B			
	10	fT9P6-1EIH8-47I99-EX9wZ-eNT8N-Be			
	11	Y59PT-1EIH8-47I9g-EX9wZ-BNT8N-B			
	12	WJ9PR-1EIH8-47I91-EX9wZ-4NT8N-B			
	13	Si9PH-1EIH8-47I95-EX9wZ-rNT8N-Bw			
	14	sV9Ps-1EIH8-47I9P-EX9wZ-WNT8N-B			
		Y29Pp-1EIH8-47I9d-EX9wZ-zNT8N-B		×	
	51 Item(s) 0 Ite	m(s) Selected			
					Canad
			OK		Cancel

4.9.2.3 Define Delivery Text

Start the cleverbridge *Commerce Assistant*. Edit a product and add a **delivery text**. This text will include the Activation Key which will be generated after the order process and is used in the e-mail which is send out to the customer. The delivery text can be in HTML format.

		1		
oduct ID 1336	9	Attribute List	Software (Default)	
atus list in	categories and listings	Edit Language	English	
ain Shopping Cart Desc	riptions Pictures Delivery Texts Prices Delivery Details			
Descriptions				
Add. Delivery Note 🥹				
Delivery Texts				
Key Template 🥑	<pre> <br <="" td=""/><td>can be used only once and requires an Interne</td><td>t connection.</td><td></td></pre>	can be used only once and requires an Interne	t connection.	

Add Delivery Text information

You can use one of the following sample texts. The Serial Number Key is inserted with the variable **<Key>**.

Serial Number Key - English
 Serial Number
 The Serial Number Key is your 'proof of purchase'. It can be used only once and requires an Internet connection.

The serial number key is: **<Key>** Start the application and select: I have a serial number and I want to activate (your product name).

Enter the Serial Number Key from this E-Mail (you can copy it using the clipboard), your name/company and your e-mail address. Press the button: <i>Next. </i>A dialog appears which verifies the Serial Number key online and activates the application.
(p>)
If you don't have an Internet connection, use the option: <i>You can also request an unlock key by E-Mail.</i>
(p>Help, how to activate the software, can be found by selecting the icon ?
(p>Backup your license file xy.lic.

Serial Number Key - German

SeriennummerDie
Seriennummer ist ihr 'Kaufnachweis'. Diese kann nur einmal verwendet werden und
benötigt eine Internet Verbindung
Die Seriennummer lautet: <Key>
Starten Sie die Anwendung und wählen Sie: Ich habe eine Seriennummer und

möchte (Ihr Produktname) aktivieren<I>.

</i>Geben Sie die Seriennummer von diesem E-Mail (diese kann über die Zwischenablage kopiert werden), Name/Firma und Ihre E-Mail Adresse ein. Drücken Sie die Schaltfläche: <i>Weiter. </i>Es erscheint ein Dialogfenster, das die Seriennummer online überprüft und die Software aktiviert.

Wenn keine Internet Verbindung zur Verfügung steht wählen Sie die Option: <i> Sie können auch per E-Mail einen Freischaltschlüssel anfordern.</i> Hilfe, wie die Software aktiviert werden kann, ist über das Symbol ? verfügbar. Sichern Sie die Lizenzdatei XY.lic.

4.9.2.4 Upload Project Files

To distribute via a download link, all files from the **folder deploy** [163] have to be packed into **one ZIP file**. Use the option **Save as ZIP** in the Screen - Save [91].

• Never start the Multimedia Player for testing before you make the exe or zip file, as the <u>license file</u> is modified with each start and cannot be used any longer for distribution

See also Adding an Installer

Start the cleverbridge *Commerce Assistant*. Select **Product Files** and then press the button **Upload Product File**. Select your zipped file from the deploy folder and upload the file.

Products & Delivery \$ Products Product Groups 👯 Key Lists 👹 Key Generators Product Files Shipping Configurations Regions

4.9.2.5 Define Delivery Details - Download Link

Start the cleverbridge *Commerce Assistant* and edit a product. In the TAB **Delivery Details** you specify that cleverbridge delivers your <u>uploaded project files</u> by download link.

Press the button *Add* and select **Cleverbridge delivers full version by download.** Then select Download File and select your <u>uploaded project file</u> 206 in the drop down list.

207

oduct ID	13369	Attribute List	Software (Default)	
atus	list in categories and listings	Edit Language	English	
in Shopping C	Cart Descriptions Pictures Delivery Texts Prices Delivery Details			
unning No	/ Delivery Type			Add
	1 cleverbridge delivers key			Remove
	2 cleverbridge delivers full version by download			I Kelliove
				Move up
				Move down
				11076 0000
(tem(s) 1 Iten	m(s) Selected			
ptions				
ownload File	mmeinstall-premium.EXE 🛛 💽			

4.9.2.6 Creating order specific Serial Numbers

If you sell a <u>network license</u> where each order can contain a different quantity of licenses, it is not possible to work with uploaded keys. You have to create a Serial Number Key which is different per order and includes the quantity of licenses ordered.

After the order process, an automated Licence Generator is invoked by the shop system. The automated Licence Generator uses the quantity from the order and a special definition file to generate a Serial Number key which includes the number of licenses for a network license.



Start of application – select Activation Method (Online, E-Mail, Fax, Phone) requires to type in user name and E-Mail

4.9.2.6.1 Build configuration file

You can define a product (article) you want to sell with the cleverbridge program *Commerce Assistant* (CA).

First add a new product (article) in the Cleverbridge shop. You need the **ProductID** from the cleverbridge shop in the configuration file.

Product ID 13369 Status list in	categories and listings	3369) Product is used ig-autogener	in	Attribute List Edit Language	Software (Default) English	
- General Product Name @	Licence Protector Multimedia Edition Premium		General	1.2		
Add. Name Information			User Interface la			
Product Short Name @	lp-mme-premium		Operating System		DS 9/Classic	
Internal Product ID 🥥				Mac C	os x	
Product Reporting Group	Licence Protector Multimedia Edition	~		MS DO		
Support Contact		~		Nove	Netware	~

Add product with Commerce Assistant

A configuration file to create a <u>Serial Number</u> (319) is generated automatically in the folder ... \projectname**Config\shop-integration** after selecting <u>Distribute / Save</u> (30).

Projectname.xml

This file contains the internal project definitions and must not be changed.

Config-Autogenerator.xml

This file has to be adapted. You have to add the product ID (article number) which is used in the shop system.

The file uploaded to cleverbridge must always have the name **config-autogenerator**. **xml**. If you have multiple products, you can **add any number of product definitions** to this file. Use an <u>XML Editor</u> to copy and paste the configuration settings from all projects into one single file **config-autogenerator.xml**.

Serial Number definition
 In the config-autogenerator file you have to replace

• ProductID with the ProductID from cleverbridge

Change the other values only if you want to change default values

- Value should be 1 and is multiplied with the quantity of the order
- Days see Allow additional days after applying Serial Number 110
- LocalReuse see Multiple Usage of Serial Numbers 110

210



4.9.2.6.2 Send files to Cleverbridge

As it is not possible to directly upload the files, you have to e-mail the following files to cleverbridge.

- config-autogenerator.xml 208
- your project template(s) (projectname.xml): you find them in the folder ..\projectname **\Config\shop-integration**
- the Generator for cleverbridge. The name of the file is algshopxy.exe where xy is the version number - eg. algshop25.exe. This file can be found in the folder ...Multimedia Protector\Shop or ...Automatic Generator
- your license file *mp.lic* from the main directory ...\Multimedia Protector\

If you do have multiple applications which use different versions of Multimedia Protector, you could use for each product a different algshop.exe file from different Multimedia Protector versions.

4.9.2.6.3 Define Delivery Text

Start the cleverbridge *Commerce Assistant*. Edit a product and add a **delivery text**. This text will include the Activation Key which will be generated after the order process and is used in the e-mail which is send out to the customer. The delivery text can be in HTML format.

211

pduct ID 1336	9	Attribute List	Software (Default)	
atus list ir	categories and listings	Edit Language	English	
ain Shopping Cart Des	riptions Pictures Delivery Texts Prices Delivery Details			
Descriptions				
Add. Delivery Note 🍘				
Delivery Texts				
Key Template 🍘	Serial Number The Serial Number Key is your 'proof of purchase'. It can	be used only once and requires an Intern	et connection.	
	The serial number key is: <key> </key>			

Add Delivery Text information

You can use one of the following sample texts. The Serial Number Key is inserted with the variable **<Key>**.

Serial Number Key - English
 Serial Number
 The Serial Number Key is your 'proof of purchase'. It can be used only once and requires an Internet connection.

The serial number key is: **<Key>** Start the application and select: I have a serial number and I want to activate (your product name).

Enter the Serial Number Key from this E-Mail (you can copy it using the clipboard), your name/company and your e-mail address. Press the button: <i>Next. </i>A dialog appears which verifies the Serial Number key online and activates the application.
(p>)
If you don't have an Internet connection, use the option: <i>You can also request an unlock key by E-Mail.</i>
(p>Help, how to activate the software, can be found by selecting the icon ?
(p>Backup your license file xy.lic.

Serial Number Key - German

SeriennummerDie
Seriennummer ist ihr 'Kaufnachweis'. Diese kann nur einmal verwendet werden und
benötigt eine Internet Verbindung
Die Seriennummer lautet: <Key>
Starten Sie die Anwendung und wählen Sie: Ich habe eine Seriennummer und

Starten Sie die Anwendung und wahlen Sie: Ich habe eine Seriennummer möchte (Ihr Produktname) aktivieren<l>.

</i>Geben Sie die Seriennummer von diesem E-Mail (diese kann über die Zwischenablage kopiert werden), Name/Firma und Ihre E-Mail Adresse ein. Drücken Sie die Schaltfläche: <i>Weiter. </i>Es erscheint ein Dialogfenster, das die Seriennummer online überprüft und die Software aktiviert.

Wenn keine Internet Verbindung zur Verfügung steht wählen Sie die Option: <i> Sie können auch per E-Mail einen Freischaltschlüssel anfordern.</i> Hilfe, wie die Software aktiviert werden kann, ist über das Symbol ? verfügbar. Sichern Sie die Lizenzdatei XY.lic.

4.9.2.6.4 Upload Project Files

To distribute via a download link, all files from the **folder deploy** [163] have to be packed into **one ZIP file**. Use the option **Save as ZIP** in the Screen - Save [91].

• Never start the Multimedia Player for testing before you make the exe or zip file, as the <u>license file</u> is modified with each start and cannot be used any longer for distribution

See also	
Adding an	Installer 97

Start the cleverbridge *Commerce Assistant*. Select **Product Files** and then press the button **Upload Product File**. Select your zipped file from the deploy folder and upload the file.

Products & Delivery 🏾 💲	
🞲 Products	
🎁 Product Groups	
🥵 Key Lists	
I Key Generators	
🛅 Product Files	
🛃 Shipping Configurations	
🍯 Regions	

4.9.2.6.5 Define Delivery Details - Keygenerator

Start the cleverbridge *Commerce Assistant* and edit a product. In the TAB **Delivery Details** you specify the Licence Generator, which the shop System invokes after the order process. See - <u>Send files to Cleverbridge</u> [210] - how to upload the necessary files.

Add Key Generator

Press the button *Add* and select **Cleverbridge delivers key.** Then select **Executable Key Genera** Generator. By default it has the name **algshopxy.exe** where xy is the version number - e.g. algsho

oduct ID	2260				Attri
	3369				Aun
atus	st in categories and listings				Edit
ain Shopping Cart	Descriptions Pictures Delive	ry Texts Prices	Delivery Details		
Running No	/ De	livery Type			
	1 de	verbridge deliver	s full version by do	wnload	
	2 de	verbridge deliver	s key		
2 Item(s) 1 Item(s) S	elected				
2 Item(s) 1 Item(s) S Options	elected				
-Options	or				
Options Web Key Generat	or				

Next step is to add your download package.

Add Download Package

Press the button *Add* and select **Cleverbridge delivers full version by download.** Then select Do project file 206 in the drop down list.

oduct ID	13369						A
atus	list in categorie:	s and listin	igs 💽 🚩				E
ain Shopping Cart	Descriptions	Pictures	Delivery Texts	Prices	Delivery Details		
Running No			/ Delivery Typ	e			
			1 cleverbridge	delivers	; key		
			2 cleverbridge	delivers	; full version by do	wnload	
2 Item(s) 1 Item(s) Selected						
2 Item(s) 1 Item(s -Options							
		meinstall-p	premium.EXE				
	m	meinstall-p nglish	premium.EXE				

4.9.2.6.6 Define Delivery Details - Download Link

Start the cleverbridge *Commerce Assistant* and edit a product. In the TAB **Delivery Details** you specify that cleverbridge delivers your <u>uploaded project files</u> by download link.

Press the button *Add* and select **Cleverbridge delivers full version by download.** Then select Download File and select your <u>uploaded project file</u> 206 in the drop down list.

🏮 Edit Product Lic	ence Protector Multimedia Edition Premium (13369)		_	_ 🗆 🔀
Product ID	13369	Attribute List	Software (Default)	~
Status	list in categories and listings	Edit Language	English	~
Main Shopping Cart	Descriptions Pictures Delivery Texts Prices Delivery Details			
Running No	/ Delivery Type 1 deverbridge delivers key 2 deverbridge delivers full version by download			Add Remove
				Move up Move down
2 Item(s) 1 Item(s)	Selected			
Options				
Download File	mmeinstall-premium.EXE 🕥 🕞			
Language	English			
Description				<u> </u>

4.9.3 Element5/Sharelt

The integration into the Element5 / Share-it! e-commerce system (<u>www.element5.com</u>, <u>www.shareit.com</u>) can be done without programming - just by defining the desired action. The Share-it! and element5 shop uses the same integration.

These steps are necessary to integrate Multimedia Protector:

- Build a key list with Serial Numbers 201
- Upload Serial Numbers 216
- Define Delivery Text 218
- Upload Project Files 219
- Define Delivery Option 220

This workflow is intended for single user / PC license. The order process can allow ordering multiple single user licenses at a time. Per license, one Serial Number key is delivered.

If you sell a <u>network license</u> where each order can contain a different number of licenses, it is not possible to work with uploaded keys. You have to create a Serial Number Key which is different per order and includes the number of licenses ordered.

See chapter - Creating order specific Serial Numbers. 207

4.9.3.1 Build a key list with Serial Numbers

First you have to build a list with Serial Numbers which are uploaded to the shop. Depending on your sales, create 100 or 1000 Serial Number keys to upload.

Within the *Screen - Administration* create a list of Serial Numbers - for details see <u>Create</u> <u>Serial Number Key</u> . Save the key list to a file with **Save generated keys to file**.

Multimedia Protector – flash-demo [C/\l					00
Administration					
Serial Number Unlocking with Copy Prot.	Unlocking without Copy Prot. A	dditional Licen	ces		Keys
Additional days after applying Serial Number 3 Number of Users 2 V	Generate Key		Number of des	ired Serial Numbers	ys Misc
9Q9PM-1EIH8-47J97-EX9wZ-INT8N-BuFDE zq9PT-1EIH8-47J9e-EX9wZ-XNT8N-BvFDo ID9Pr-1EIH8-47J9L-EX9wZ-1NT8N-BXFD3	Textbox with all generated Serial Numbers The content of the textbo can be saved to a file	κ		Save Keylist to a file	
₩ use extended description				Save generated keys to file)
Settings	Image		Player Options	Administration	
Licence Information	Data Import		Save]	?

4.9.3.2 Upload Serial Numbers

Start the Element5 / Share-it! Control Panel.

Select Key List, and then Create new list.

🔁 element 5 Control Panel	Edit Key Lists for your Products
Start Page Start Page Products Dreduct	Key lists: Manage key lists for your production once lists have been activated, you can m Team). You can also create new key list "Delivery Type".
Multi-Update Product Delivery	Only one license key from the key list will b
Delivery Type Default Settings	Static license key: A static license key is same license key after buying your product
Key Lists Upload Product	This feature can be de-activated by our PRI
Delivery Time	Create new list
Now open the key list with Serial Numbers you created - see <u>build a key list with Serial</u> <u>Numbers</u> and copy all keys into the clipboard (CTRL+C). Go back to the control panel, type in a name for the key list and paste the clipboard (CTRL+V) with your Serial Number Keys.

Derault Settings	same license key after buying your products, please enter the static license key for the		
Key Lists	This feature can be de-activated by our PRM Team (publishers@element5.com) if you d		
	Create new list		
Descriptions	New key list		
⊕-Shipping charges Import/Export	Please note that the maximum number of license keys per key list is 5000.		
Test Order	Name of list : -number-product-multimedia		
Integration Assistant Marketing Promotions Manage Partners Design and Layout Manage Transactions Administration Contact Logout	Edit and add to list : It9PA-1EIH8-4719U-EX9WZ-FNT8N-BiFDg 0w9PM-1EIH8-4719x-EX9WZ-QNT8N-B2FDo q59PH-1EIH8-4719F-EX9WZ-VNT8N-BEFDB sD9Pd-1EIH8-47190-EX9WZ-QNT8N-BxFD6 1M9Pr-1EIH8-47190-EX9WZ-QNT8N-BxFDT Fw9PS-1EIH8-4719U-EX9WZ-SNT8N-BWFDM VY9Pq-1EIH8-4719U-EX9WZ-ENT8N-BWFDM VY9Pq-1EIH8-4719V-EX9WZ-LNT8N-BWFDM Du9P6-1EIH8-4719V-EX9WZ-NT8N-BWFDM Du9P6-1EIH8-4719J-EX9WZ-NT8N-BWFDM J9PF-1EIH8-4719J-EX9WZ-NT8N-BWFDM Lj9PF-1EIH8-4719J-EX9WZ-NT8N-BWFDM		
element 5 Control Panel 5.7 Copyright 2007 element 5.	Wh9Pw-1EIH8-47I90-EX9wZ-VNT8N-B9FDe mp9Pr-1EIH8-47I9G-EX9wZ-7NT8N-BKFDk		
	Save		

Copy key list from clipboard

The last step is to assign the key list to a product.

Select *Product Delivery*, **Delivery Type**. On the right side, select your product and press - Show data.

Press the button Add and select **element5 delivers: License Key.** Select your key list from Uploaded Key list and check Should a license key be sent to the customer for each license ordered?

2.	element 5 delivers: License key			
	Please select one of the following methods for your customers to receive license keys.			
	Oploaded key list:	serial-number-multimedia-edtion(#108537) (34 Key available) 💌 0		
		Should a license key be sent to the customer for each license ordered? 0		

4.9.3.3 Define Delivery Text

Start the Element5 / Share-it! *Control Panel.* Edit a product and add a **delivery text.** This text will include the Activation Key which will be generated after the order process and is used in the e-mail which is send out to the customer. The delivery text can be in HTML format.

In the order process, links to element 5's Terms and Conditions and Privacy Statement are displayed in the footer of the relevant Wel of your products. In the event that local legal regulations require special notices, it is the responsibility of element 5 to fulfill these of and to ensure the uniformity of the Terms and Conditions, please do not integrate any references to other Terms and Conditions into the

```
E-mail template: 

This is the text that you would like to appear in the e-mail that is sent to your customers with the license key. This is only applicable text must contain a <%KEY%> tag, which is replaced by the generated license key.

<br/>
<
```

Add Delivery Text information

You can use one of the following sample texts. The Serial Number is inserted with the variable **<%KEY%>**.

Serial Number Key - English
 Serial Number
 The Serial Number Key is your 'proof of purchase'. It can be used only once and requires an Internet connection.

The serial number key is: <%KEY%> Start the application and select: I have a serial number and I want to activate (your product name).

<

request an unlock key by E-Mail.</i>

Help, how to activate the software, can be found by selecting the icon ? Backup your license file xy.lic.

Serial Number Key - German
 SeriennummerDie
 Seriennummer ist ihr 'Kaufnachweis'. Diese kann nur einmal verwendet werden und benötigt eine Internet Verbindung
 Die Seriennummer lautet: <<%KEY%>
 Starten Sie die Anwendung und wählen Sie: Ich habe eine Seriennummer und möchte (Ihr Produktname) aktivieren<l>.

</i>Geben Sie die Seriennummer von diesem E-Mail (diese kann über die Zwischenablage kopiert werden), Name/Firma und Ihre E-Mail Adresse ein. Drücken Sie die Schaltfläche: <i>Weiter. </i>Es erscheint ein Dialogfenster, das die Seriennummer online überprüft und die Software aktiviert. Wenn keine Internet Verbindung zur Verfügung steht wählen Sie die Option: <i>Sie können auch per E-Mail einen Freischaltschlüssel anfordern.</i> Hilfe, wie die Software aktiviert werden kann, ist über das Symbol ? verfügbar. Sichern Sie die Lizenzdatei XY.lic.

4.9.3.4 Upload Project Files

To distribute via a download link, all files from the **folder deploy** [163] have to be packed into **one ZIP file**. Use the option **Save as ZIP** in the <u>Screen - Save</u> [91].

• Never start the Multimedia Player for testing before you make the exe or zip file, as the <u>license file</u> is modified with each start and cannot be used any longer for distribution

See also Adding an Installer

Start the Element5 / Share-it! *Control Panel*. Select **Upload Product** and then either select **Replace an existing file** or **Upload a new file**. Select your zipped file from the deploy folder and upload the file.

🗟 element 5 Control Panel	ſ
🕀 🗍 Start Page	I.
🖶 🗂 Reporting	<u>۲</u>
🛱 🛱 Products	
⊕…Edit	
Multi-Update	
⊖Product Delivery	
Delivery Type	
Default Settings	
Key Lists	
Upload Product	Ι.
Assign after uploading via FTP	L L
Delivery Time	1.
Create Groups	

4.9.3.5 Define Delivery Type

Start the Element5 / Share-it! *Control Panel*. With **Delivery Type** you specify that Element5 / Share-it! delivers your <u>uploaded project files</u> by download link.

Select *Product Delivery*, **Delivery Type**. On the right side, select your product and press - Show data.

Press the button *Add* and select **element5 delivers: download link for the full version full version**. Then select *File to be shipped* and select your <u>uploaded project file</u> 210 in the drop down list.

🔄 element 5 Control Panel	Edit Delivery Types		
Gamma Start Page Gamm	Specify detailed information about the delivery type for your products here. You can indicate what will be deliv. (e.g. by e-mail or by postal mail), and whether it is you or element 5 who is responsible for product delivery. This information will be displayed for the customer on the final page of the order process and in the e-mail with → Regarding <u>documentation</u> on the download link and license key product delivery types.		
Delivery Type Default Settings Key Lists Upload Product Assign after uploading via FTP Delivery Time	Product Product LICENCE PROTECTOR Multimedia Edition (#300053149) Finding a product name: Show data		
Create Groups Descriptions Additional Fields Goshipping charges Import/Export Test Order			
Hest Orden H	File size (bytes): 19411615 Date of last change: 10-APR-06		

4.9.3.6 Creating order specific Serial Numbers

If you sell a <u>network license</u> where each order can contain a different quantity of licenses, it is not possible to work with uploaded keys. You have to create a Serial Number Key which is different per order and includes the quantity of licenses ordered.

After the order process, an automated Licence Generator is invoked by the shop system. The automated Licence Generator uses the quantity from the order and a special definition file to generate a Serial Number key which includes the number of licenses for a network license.



Start of application – select Activation Method (Online, E-Mail, Fax, Phone) requires to type in user name and E-Mail

4.9.3.6.1 Build configuration file

You can define a product (article) you want to sell with the Element5 / Share-it! program *Control Panel.*

First add a new product (article) in the Element5 / Share-it! shop. You need the **Product Number** from the Element5 / Share-it! shop in the configuration file.

~	(
🔄 element 5 Control Panel	Edit		
🕀 🛅 Start Page			
🗄 💼 Reporting	Product Product family 🛛 🗋 Bundle 🖓 🗌 "Extended Download" product 🤅		
🛱 🚔 Products	Product LICENCE PROTECTOR Multimedia Edition (#300053149)		
⊜ Edit		Product Number	
Add	Show data	is used in	
Edit		config-autogenerator.xml	
Additional Options	Product information	file	
Сору		Kannan	
Delete	Product number:	300053149	
Volume Discount Prices	Product name:	LICENCE PROTECTOR Multimedia Edition *	
Define Catalog			
Multi-Update	Version:	1.x	

Add product with Control Panel

Configuration file to create a <u>Serial Number</u> (319) is generated automatically in the folder ... \projectname **\Config\shop-integration** after selecting <u>Distribute / Save</u> [89].

Projectname.xml

This file contains the internal project definitions and may not be changed.

Config-Autogenerator.xml

This file has to be adapted. You have to add the product ID (article number) which is used in the shop system.

The file uploaded to Element5 / Share-it! must always have the name configautogenerator.xml. If you have multiple products, you can add any number of product definitions to this file. Use an XML Editor 258 to copy and paste the configuration settings from all projects into one single file config-autogenerator.xml.

- Serial Number definition In the config-autogenerator file you have to replace
 - ProductID with the ProductID from Element5 / Share-it!

Change the other values only if you want to change default values

- Value should be 1 and is multiplied with the quantity of the order
- Days see Allow additional days after applying Serial Number 110
- LocalReuse see <u>Multiple Usage of Serial Numbers</u>

223

🖾 XML Notepad - C:\Programme\Multimedia Protec	ctor Premium\1.3 (Beta)\Demodata\flash-d				
<u> Eile E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew Insert <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> elp					
i 🗋 📂 🛃 🦘 (~ 🐰 🗈 隆 🗙 🗄 🖷 🖼 🚥					
Tree View XSL Output					
xml E Connector E Product	version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" s				
Product ID	13369				
+ ProductName	flash-demo				
🗄 🖳 😜 ProjectFilename	flash-demo.xml				
🗄 🔛 ActivationKey	yes				
E Modules					
🖻 ····· 🗀 Module					
Henry ModuleNumber	ZBN001				
The Value	1				
AbsoluteLics	yes				
∃ Days ∃ AbsoluteDays	3				
Hebletivation	no				
ForceOnlineCheck	required				
	ves				
	1				

4.9.3.6.2 Send files to Element5 / Share-it!

As it is not possible to directly upload the files, you have to e-mail the following files to Element5 / Share-it!:

- config-autogenerator.xml 221
- your project template(s) (projectname.xml): you find them in the folder ..\projectname **\Config\shop-integration**
- the Generator for cleverbridge. The name of the file is **algshopxy.exe** where xy is the version number eg. algshop25.exe. This file can be found in the folder ...Multimedia Protector\Shop or ...Automatic Generator
- your license file mp.lic from the main directory ... Multimedia Protector

If you do have multiple applications and they use different versions of Multimedia Protector, you could use for each product a different algshop.exe file from different Multimedia Protector versions.

4.9.3.6.3 Define Delivery Text

Start the Element5 / Share-it! *Control Panel.* Edit a product and add a **delivery text.** This text will include the Activation Key which will be generated after the order process and is used in the e-mail which is send out to the customer. The delivery text can be in HTML format.

In the order process, links to element 5's Terms and Conditions and Privacy Statement are displayed in the footer of the relevant Wel of your products. In the event that local legal regulations require special notices, it is the responsibility of element 5 to fulfill these of and to ensure the uniformity of the Terms and Conditions, please do not integrate any references to other Terms and Conditions into the terms and Conditions into the terms and Conditions into the terms and Conditions.

E-mail template:
This is the text that you would like to appear in the e-mail that is sent to your customers with the license key. This is only applicable text must contain a <%KEY%> tag, which is replaced by the generated license key.

Add Delivery Text information

You can use one of the following sample texts. The Serial Number is inserted with the variable **<%KEY%>**.

Serial Number Key - English

The serial number key is: <%KEY%> Start the application and select: I have a serial number and I want to activate (your product name).

</bd>

Enter the Serial Number Key from this E-Mail (you can copy it using the clipboard), your name/company and your e-mail address. Press the button: <i>Next. </i>A dialog appears which verifies the Serial Number key online and activates the application.
(p>) If you don't have an Internet connection use the option: <i>You can also request an unlock key by E-Mail.</i>

Help, how to activate the software, can be found by selecting the icon ? Backup your license file xy.lic.

Serial Number Key - German

SeriennummerDie
Seriennummer ist ihr 'Kaufnachweis'. Diese kann nur einmal verwendet werden und
benötigt eine Internet Verbindung
Die Seriennummer lautet: <<%KEY%>
Starten Sie die Anwendung und wählen Sie: Ich habe eine Seriennummer und
möchte (Ihr Produktname) aktivieren<l>.

</i>Geben Sie die Seriennummer von diesem E-Mail (diese kann über die Zwischenablage kopiert werden), Name/Firma und Ihre E-Mail Adresse ein. Drücken Sie die Schaltfläche: <i>Weiter. </i>Es erscheint ein Dialogfenster, das die Seriennummer online überprüft und die Software aktiviert.

225

Sie können auch per E-Mail einen Freischaltschlüssel anfordern.</i>Hilfe, wie die Software aktiviert werden kann, ist über das Symbol ? verfügbar.Sichern Sie die Lizenzdatei XY.lic.

4.9.3.6.4 Upload Project Files

To distribute via a download link, all files from the <u>folder deploy</u> 163 have to be packed into **one ZIP file**. Use the option **Save as ZIP** in the <u>Screen - Save</u> 91.

• Never start the Multimedia Player for testing before you make the exe or zip file, as the <u>license file</u> is modified with each start and cannot be used any longer for distribution

See also Adding an Installer

Start the Element5 / Share-it! *Control Panel*. Select **Upload Product** and then either select **Replace an existing file** or **Upload a new file**. Select your zipped file from the deploy folder and upload the file.

🔁 element 5 Control Panel	ſ
🕀 💼 Start Page	١.
🗄 🗂 Reporting	11
🖻 🚔 Products	
⊕ Edit	
Multi-Update	
□ Product Delivery	
Delivery Type	
Default Settings	
····· Key Lists	
Assign after uploading via FTP	
Delivery Time	1'
Create Groups	

4.9.3.6.5 Define Delivery Type

Within the option *Delivery Type* you specify the Licence Generator which the shop System invokes after the order process. See - <u>Send files to Element5 / Share-it!</u> 223 - how to upload the necessary files.

Add Key Generator

Press the button *Add* and select **element 5 delivers: License key.** Then select **Installed Key Gen** select the latest Licence Generator. By default, it has the name **algshopxy.exe** where xy is the vere.g. algshop25.exe.

Edit Delivery Types

Specify detailed information about the delivery type for your products here. You can indicate what will be delivered (e.g. by e-mail or by postal mail), and whether it is you or element 5 who is responsible for product of This information will be displayed for the customer on the final page of the order process and in the e-mail with

→ Regarding documentation on the download link and license key product delivery types.

✓ Product				
Product LICENCE PROTECTOR Multimedia Edition (#300053149)				
Show data				
1. element 5 delivers: Download link for the full version				

element 5 delivers: Down	oad link for the full version
File to be shipped:	LPInstall.EXE (18956.7 KB)
Description (optional):	Θ
Extended Download product:	Do not use an Extended Download product 🛛 🕑 🚱
File size (bytes):	19411615
Date of last change:	10-APR-06

2. element 5 delivers: License key

Please select one of the following methods for your customers to receive license keys.

Ouploaded key list:	0
	Should a license key be sent to the customer for each license ordered?
 Installed key generator: 	AutoLicGenElement5NOLIC24.exe (File size (bytes): 3526656, Date: 02-DEC
○ Key generator via a URL:	•
O Static key:	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

Next step is to add your download package.

Add Download Package

Save

Start the Element5 / Share-it! Control Panel. With **Delivery Type** you specify that Element5 / Share download link.

Select Product Delivery, Delivery Type. On the right side select your product and press - Show date

Press the button *Add* and select **element5 delivers: download link for the full version full version uploaded project file** [206] in the drop down list.

🔄 element 5 Control Panel	Edit Delivery Types		
 Start Page Reporting Products Edit Multi-Update Product Delivery 	Specify detailed information about the delivery type (e.g. by e-mail or by postal mail), and whether it is This information will be displayed for the customer of → Regarding <u>documentation</u> on the download link an		
- Delivery Type	Product		
Default Settings Key Lists Upload Product Assign after uploading via FTP Delivery Time Create Groups Descriptions Additional Fields Shipping charges Import/Export Test Order	Product LICENCE PROTECTOR Multimedia Edition (# Finding a product name:		
Integration Assistant Marketing Promotions Manage Partners	File size (bytes): 19411615 Date of last change: 10-APR-06		

4.10 How TOs and FAQ

This chapter introduces Frequently Asked Questions as well as tips and tricks.

Click on the + sign on the left side to get a complete list.

4.10.1 How can I print this Tutorial?

Print this tutorial

The Online Tutorial is also available as a PDF document.

You can print this tutorial - click on the link to download PDF file

228

4.10.2 Application is not running as expected

If your application in the Multimedia Player is behaving different than it would be running in the original flash player or PPT / PDF Viewer, check these solutions.

4.10.2.1 Application loads - configuration text is missing

If the application loads, but the configuration text which is provided via an XML file is missing, try again, using the Option <u>Always use relative paths</u>.

If you use an flash application with one of the provided <u>menu application</u> [273], copy the flash application to the path where the menu is located. Some flash applications using an configuration file cannot handle the configuration file when they are located in a sub folder.

4.10.3 How to activate Multimedia Protector

During the trial period, the activation screen appears with each program start. You need a Serial Number to activate the product - see <u>Buy Serial Number</u> [230].

To be sure to work with the latest version, always download the version you get with the order confirmation e-mail.

First uninstall the version on your PC - see How do I uninstall Multimedia Protector 261?.

What happens during activation?

The activation process will bind the license to the PC. Use the Serial Number only on the PC you want to use Multimedia Protector. The Serial Number cannot be used twice. After the activation is done, Multimedia Protector will run only on this PC. Your hardware data, Serial Number, name, e-mail address and some program specific data is transferred to our activation center. No other data stored on your PC is transmitted.

Select Activation Method

On the first screen, either choose

- *I have a Serial Number and I want to activate Multimedia Protector*. This will use the <u>Online Activation</u> 230. This is the recommended activation method and should be used if an Internet connection is available
- You can also request an unlock key by E-Mail. This will use the E-Mail Activation [231]

© 2008 Mirage Computer Systems GmbH





See also

Buy Serial Number 230 Online Activation 230 E-Mail Activation 230 Reinstall Software 231 Your Multimedia Edition License 234

4.10.3.1 Buy Serial Number

The Serial Number is your **proof of purchase**. It is unique and will look like this.

dO8uc-G1iC9-jOGeA-BqgEX-U71ID-0V1VX

There are 6 blocks each with 5 characters. The blocks are separated by a hyphen for better readability.

Select your Version

Premium or Standard version? Check out the <u>feature comparison matrix</u> which version is right for you.

Buy Serial Number

If you do not have a valid serial number, you can buy it here - Buy Multimedia Protector.

Activate Multimedia Protector

Activate the product <u>Online</u> 230 or by <u>E-Mail</u> 231.

4.10.3.2 Online Activation

The Online Activation requires the <u>Serial Number</u> (230), company name and e-mail address. Then the license will be verified online and activated. No additional step will be required. Multimedia Protector can now be used on this PC.

Deckup your Serial Number. You will need it for a reinstallation.

230

231

Activation of Multimedia Protector P	remium 2.0		×
	Online Activation Enter Your Serial Number Bs992-06PC1-92838-FWEEM-ai47N-9K7I2 Where to find your Serial Number?		
Serial Number In order to receive a valid Serial Number, you must purchase the product. Buy It	Enter Your Name/Company Tom Hanks Enter Your E-Mail Address		
Please enter all information that is requested in order to start the activation process.	tom.hanks@smartinc.com		
Show License Information	Activate the product by e-mail	Back	Next

4.10.3.3 E-Mail Activation

The E-Mail Activation requires the <u>Serial Number</u> (230), company name and e-mail address.

Request Unlock Key

After filling out the screen, select: **Request Unlock Key by E-Mail - send E-Mail**. This will open your default E-Mail client. An e-mail with the hardware IDs and license information will be created. Press **send** to send the e-mail to our activation center. You will get an <u>Unlock Key</u> as back within 2-3 business days.

Dackup your Serial Number. You will need it for a reinstallation [233].

Activation of Multimedia Protector P	remium 2.0	x
	Request Unlock Key by E-Mail Enter Your Serial Number Bs992-06PC1-92838-FWEEM-ai47N-9K712 Where to find your Serial Number?	
Serial Number	Enter Your Name/Company	
In order to receive a valid Serial Number, you must purchase the product.	Tom Hanks	
Buy It Please enter all information that is requested in order to start the activation process.	Enter Your E-Mail Address tom.hanks@smartinc.com Your entered registration information will be sent to the Activation Center. You will receive an E-Mail containing information to unlock this product. Request Unlock Key by E-Mail - send E-Mail Activate the product online	
Show License Information ()	Back Next	

See also

Enter Unlock Key 233

4.10.3.3.1 Enter Unlock Key

After requesting the Unlock Key by <u>e-mail</u>, the screen shown below will appear during each program start. Type in the Unlock Key you got back by E-Mail. The activation process is then completed.

Activation of Multimedia Protector P	Premium 2.0
Multimodia Protector Write une transmission Write une transmission W	Enter Unlock Key If you have received information to unlock Multimedia Protector Premium 2.0, please enter the Unlock Key(s). If there is more than one key, enter one key after another in the correct order. Make sure to enter keys in a case-sensitive manner.
About Unlocking	
Enter all received keys to unlock the product.	Арріу Кеу
Show License Information	Back Next

See also

E-Mail Activation 231

4.10.3.4 Reinstall Software

You can reinstall the application **on the same PC / Server** as often as you like. First uninstall Multimedia Protector, delete the complete installation folder, then reinstall the application - see <u>How to activate Multimedia Protector</u> $\begin{bmatrix} 228 \\ 228 \end{bmatrix}$.

4.10.3.5 Your Multimedia Protector License

Multimedia Protector comes with an own license file - **mp.lic**. The license is a license **PER PC / COMPUTER**. Copy Protection is turned on after activation. We recommend making a backup of the license file.

- You have to activate the product before you can use it without the restrictions of the demo version 56 see How to activate Multimedia Protector 228
- Find out more about your license in the chapter Display your Licence [237]
- See <u>Licence Agreement</u> 333 for details of usage.

See also

Demo version 56 Browse your License 237 Apply Activation Key 234 License Agreement 333

4.10.3.6 Apply Activation Key

An Activation Key is used to modify the license information (e.g. increase number of licenses). All Activation Keys are unique and have the same format like.

dO8uc-G1iC9-jOGeA-BqgEX-U71ID-0V1VX

There are 6 blocks each with 5 characters. The blocks are separated by a hyphen for better readability.

Where do I apply the Activation Key

If you got an Activation Key via E-Mail or Fax, you can enter the key within the screen *Administration, TAB Misc, <u>Show License Information</u> 108.*

👲 Multimedia Protector - flash-demo [C:\	Program Files\2.0\demodata\flas	sh-de	mo.mme]	
Administration				
About Multimedia Protector	Check for Updates			
Repair and Compress Project file				
Web Activation Server Administration			Change	URL
			🔲 I use an own Activation	Server
Hosting Number 1381806			FTP-Server address	
Hosting Password	***		FTP Account	
			FTP Password	****
			Path on FTP-Server	
Primary Hardware ID (Installation Code)	Netbios Name(local)(4)	•		
Alternative Hardware ID (Installation Code	e) MAC Address(2)	-		
Display Quick Introduction help				
Error Tracking Enabled				
Select path for Log-files				
Show License Information				
Settings	Image		Player Options)
License Information	Data Import	Ē	Save)

Screen - Administration, TAB Misc

Online Validation

O Some Activation Keys are validated online and they require an Internet connection. After pressing the OK button this screen appears.



Web Activa	tion	
	The Activation Key has to be activa	
225	Please provide a connection to the	internet and activate it.
\smile		Proxy settings
	Activate now	<u>C</u> ancel

Apply Activation Key after Evaluation Period has expired

If the evaluation period has expired, select **Show Licence Information** (see screen below) and then press the button Activation Key.

nterion of Multimedia Protector Pr	remium 2.0
	Sorry, it is not possible to continue At start of Multimedia Protector Premium 2.0 the following problem has occurred The license of module Multimedia Protector Premium has expired
Troubles?!	
Please make sure that the product is installed correctly. Make sure that the product is registered. If you cannot solve this problem, please contact our support.	Show license information Select this option to apply an Activation Key
0	End

4.10.4 How do I find my Serial Number for Multimedia Protector?

You can access your license information and your Serial Number within the <u>administration</u> screen.

Multimedia Protector or Multimedia Protector Premium

For differences see chapter Standard or Premium Version? [56]

- Number of Computers which have a license normally 1
- <u>Demo version</u> 56 if omitted, it is a full version
- Valid until (time limitation) if omitted, it is a non time limited version
- <u>Web Activation</u> [228]- either done or required

Your Serial Number

To retrieve your Serial Number:

- click on the + sign in the first line with the label Multimedia Protector
- click on the + sign with the label Activation Keys

The visible number is your Serial Number.

Update Subscription

The update subscription entitles you to install the latest updates as long as it has not expired. See chapter Check for Updates 10^{1} how to download updates.

- Available / Not available
- Time limitation the date when the update subscription expires

Release Number

• Internal release information

Manufact	urer: Mirage Computer Systems GmbH	norder filter i sandensen. A			
	: Test Version 2.0 Premium				
	n Codes - Copy protection activated	(4)			
- Modules					
	nedia Protector Premium (Number of li	censes per Computer: 1 (the	reof 0 are available),	Activation (done))	
	kctivation Keys	v-9m7Ik	ſ		
	te Subscription (available, License is v se (20000)	alid until: 28.03.2008)			
📑 Relea		alid until: 28.03.2008)			
📑 Relea		alid until: 28.03.2008)			
📑 Relea		alid until: 28.03.2008)			
📑 Relea		alid until: 28.03.2008)			
📑 Relea		alid until: 28.03.2008)			

4.10.5 How to make a time limited evaluation / trial licence?

If you want to make a time limited trial license, you can either limit

- by x days after the first usage -> use Number of days to evaluate
- by a specified expiry date → use End of Evaluation

Details see Screen - Licence Information 7

238

Multimedia Protector

Normally you will want to remove the time limitation after the activation is done. Therefore check: *Remove time limitation after Copy Protection is turned on.*

239

Multimedia Protector - flash-demo [C:\Program Files\1.3\dem	odata\flash-demo.mme]	00
_icence Infor	mation		
Type of licence per			
Benutzer			
Computer Gleichzeitige Benutzer			
Number of Computers	1		
Evaluation Time		_	
Number of days to evaluate	15		
End of Evaluation	•	Clear Expiration Date	
No evaluation version - Serial Num	ber needed to start		
Check for system date modification			
0	1	_	
Licence Options			
Time limited version after Activatio	n		
Runtime - number of days	0		
Runtime - Expiry Date		🛛 🔹 Clear Expiration Date	
Advanced Protection			
No Activation (content protection	only)		
Settings	Image	Player Options	Administration
Licence Information	Data Import	Save	

See also

How to prolong an evaluation / trial version? [239]

4.10.6 How to prolong an evaluation / trial version?

To prolong an evaluation version, just create an Activation Key.

- additional licenses = 0
- either select: Number of days to evaluate or End of Evaluation

The Activation Key is generated within the Screen - Administration, TAB <u>Additional</u> <u>Licences</u>

If you are using the <u>Web Activation server</u> [324], use the Switch: Online Validation required to ensure that a key can never used twice.

Details for all options see Screen - Administration, TAB Additional Licences

240	Multimedia Protector
-----	----------------------

🧕 Multimedia Protector - flash-demo [(C:\Program Files\1.3\Demodata\fl	ash-demo.mme]		00
Administration	C Unlocking without Copy Prot. Addi	tional Licences		Keys
Online validation required	Generate Key	Number of days to evaluate 7	e Clear Expiration Date	Misc
Key to add 0 licences. Runtime is limited to Rh6PD-1EIL8-47F9V-EXhwZ-ONC8N-BNFD	o 7 days Notice: Can be applied on all co In	omputers!	×()+	
use extended description			Save generated keys to file	
Settings	Image	Player Options	Administration	
Licence Information	Data Import	Save		?

See also

How to make a time limited evaluation / trial license? [238]

4.10.7 How to make a full version with expiry date / time limitation?

It is possible to generate a time **limited full version**, e.g. to lease a version for a specific time. Limitation is possible either

- by x days after the activation is done or
- by a specified expiry date

For details see: <u>Time limited version after activation</u> 73

4.10.8 How to make a version without registration?

If you want to protect the content and the Multimedia Player should start unlimited times, select:

- Number of Days = **0**
- No activation (content protection only)

and a rotector hash denio	[C:\Program Files\1.3\Demodata\flash-demo.mme]	0
icence Infor	mation	
	mation	
Type of licence per		
User Computer		
Concurrent User		
Number of Computers		
Evaluation Time		
Number of days to evaluate	0	
End of Evaluation	Clear Expiration Date	
No evaluation version - Serial Nur		
Check for system date modification	on	
Licence Options		
Licence Options	ion	
Time limited version after Activati		
Time limited version after Activati Runtime - number of days		
Time limited version after Activatives Cuntime - number of days Runtime - Expiry Date Advanced Protection	0 A V Clear Expiration Date	
Time limited version after Activati Time initial version after Activati Runtime - number of days Runtime - Expiry Date Advanced Protection No Activation (content protection	0 A V Clear Expiration Date	
Time limited version after Activati Time initial version after Activati Runtime - number of days Runtime - Expiry Date Advanced Protection No Activation (content protection	Clear Expiration Date	
Time limited version after Activati Time initial version after Activati Runtime - number of days Runtime - Expiry Date Advanced Protection No Activation (content protection	Clear Expiration Date	
Time limited version after Activati Time initial version after Activati Runtime - number of days Runtime - Expiry Date Advanced Protection No Activation (content protection	Clear Expiration Date	
Time limited version after Activati Time initial version after Activati Runtime - number of days Runtime - Expiry Date Advanced Protection No Activation (content protection	Clear Expiration Date	Administration

4.10.9 How to make a licence which is limited to one person?

It is possible to limit a license to a person / user:

In the <u>Screen - Licence Information</u> select license per **user**.

If the application is a non-network application (installation is on a single PC) AND you want to limit it to one user, choose license per **User** and number of users =1. For details about the user license see Licence per User / Person 298.

🔨 This feature is available only in Multimedia Protector <u>Premium</u> 🙃 version.

4.10.10 How to invoke external files?

If your application has external files outside the encrypted database but on the same directory like the database, you can invoke these files with a special command **http://FILE:testfile.exe\$\$RUN** - for details see <u>Flash application using EXE files</u> [167]

4.10.11 How to protect the content but do not use Copy Protection?

It is possible to just protect the content, but use no licensing type like time limitation or copy protection

- Set Number of days to evaluate to 0
- End of Evaluation must be empty (press button Clear Expiration Date)
- Check No Activation (content protection only)

Details see Screen - Licence Information 75

Multimedia Edition - flash-demo [C:\Development\Installationsdateien\Demodata\flash-demo.mme]	
Licence Information	
Type of licence per	
User Computer	
Number of Computers	
Evaluation Time	
Number of days to evaluate	
End of Evaluation	
No evaluation version - Serial Number needed to start	
Evaluation Options	
Remove time limitation after Copy Protection is turned on	
Advanced Protection against Reinstallation (Tamper Detection)	
No Activation (content protection only) Notice! All Activation-Settings are ignored.	
Copy Licence to Hard Drive (mandatory for CD-ROM distribution)	
Settings Image Player Options	Administration
Licence Information Data Import Finish	0

4.10.12 How to protect? - search by file type

The Multimedia Protector offers a native support of **SWF** (Macromedia Flash) files, **FLV**, **JPEG**, **MP3** and other file types by converting these files to flash.

At least one SWF file is needed. This file can start any video, music or image files which are supported by the standard flash players. See chapter - <u>How to convert a file</u> 174 - for details.

If you are working with flash tools like Authorware or Articulate see <u>Favored Flash/HTML/</u> <u>Conversion Tools</u> for special considerations.

Below find a list of all supported file types and the steps necessary to protect the file.

- AVI, MPEG, Quicktime, Windows Media Video 179
- CHM (help file) 181
- Executable (EXE) file 165
- FLV (Video) 176
- HTML 182
- JPG (Image) 176
- MP3 (Music) 177
- **PDF** 183
- PPT (Powerpoint) 186
- PPT with Hyperlink 190
- SWF (Flash) 176
- WAV 193
- Word, Visio, Excel, Office Documents
- Word with Hyperlink 194

4.10.12.1 AVI, MPEG, Quicktime , Windows Media Video

A lot of formats can be converted and then protected by Multimedia Protector. You will find a lot of tools by searching in Google. We describe 2 tools more in detail.

10 The video will play only on a PC, not on a CD / DVD recorder connected to TV.

Convert to SWF

If you have multiple, small videos, we recommend converting the video to swf. A good tool that also adds **player controls** can be found at <u>http://www.moyea.com</u> (Moyea Flash Video MX).

- Convert the file to swf
- Import the file as start file
- If you have multiple video files to secure, use the Menu Creator 273.

See details for <u>converting with Moyea</u> 39.

Convert to FLV

Using the free Riva FLV encoder, AVI, MPEG, Quicktime and Windows Media Video can

be converted to FLV.

Download Riva FLV encoder: <u>http://rivavx.de/index.php?id=483&L=3</u>

- Convert the file to FLV
- Import the file as and set the FLV file as start file
- If you have multiple video files to secure, use the Menu Creator 273.

Convert AVI to SWF using swftools

Swftools is a collection of SWF manipulation and creation utilities - and it is free (released under GPL) - www.swftools.com .

Download the Windows Version swftools-0.7.0.exe at <u>http://www.swftools.org/download.html</u> You find a online help on the swftools web site - but here are the most useful commands.

Program to convert AVI to SWF: **avi2swf.exe** - online help: <u>http://www.swftools.org/</u> avi2swf.html

Standard Conversion

This converts a single AVI file.

avi2swf.exe file.avi

or if you .SWF file should get a new name

avi2swf.exe file.avi -o filenew.swf

4.10.12.2 CHM (help file)

To secure a CHM file (help file) the Windows viewer for this file - **hh.exe** is used. By default, every Windows system should have this file installed.

There are 3 steps to protect the CHM file:

Copy the hh.exe viewer

Copy the viewer for the chm file, the file **hh.exe** from c:\windows to your project folder where you saved the CHM file.

(1) The hh.exe from a Vista machine will not run on XP but the version from XP will run on Vista machines. If you want to support NT you have to make tests which hh.exe will run on all operating systems.

🕚 It is not in the liability of Mirage if you may distribute this file or not.

Copy the start application

To run with Multimedia Protector, a special start application is needed. Copy the file **startchm.exe** and the configuration **file chm.ini** from the Multimedia Protector installation folder ...**tools\chm** to your project folder where you saved the CHM file.

Now add the name of your chmfile in the chm.ini file. You can use any text editor to modify this file.

[Filename] chmfile=**test.chm** (change the name here)

The folder contains now all files which are:

- hh.exe
- startchm.exe and chm.ini
- your chm file



Directory with chm files and other files to import

Import the files

Now <u>import</u> all the files from the project folder you created and mark **startchm.exe as startfile** using the button **Define as starting file.** A red icon signals the start file.

The import screen would show the following files.

Dote Impo	rt			
Data Impo				
C: \kundendaten \MP-Projekte \ei		Read Files from Folder	Define as starting file	
Select Data Folder		Refresh Selected Files	Delete	
	Media File		State	
How to protect?	🔶 chm.ini		ok	
	Interest Int		ok	
<u>Audio / Music</u>	startchm.exe		ok	
EXE Files	🚸 test.chm		ok	
Images / Photos				
PDF Files				
PPT Files				
<u>Videos</u>				
Word Documents				
HTML				
How to use a menu?				
Advanced Menu				
Basic Menu				

4.10.12.3 Executables (exe file)

Settinas

Licence Information

Multimedia Protector supports a protection of .EXE files.

Image

Data Import

You can start EXE files from flash applications for secure standalone EXE files.

It is possible to protect standalone exe files (wrap an application) and also exe files, that need additional files like configuration files or dll - see chapter Secure standalone exe file (s) 166.

Player Options

Save

How does it work?

- The exe file is imported into the encrypted database and not visible. It is completely protected
- When the exe file is invoked, it is extracted to the hard disk to a hidden place and started

The security of exe files is different compared with swf files. Swf files are loaded directly into the memory and are never visible on a disk. The exe file has to be saved

Administration

3

temporarily on a folder.

If Source Code is available, the protection can be improved significantly by defining a password [168], which is required to start the EXE file.

See also

Secure standalone exe file(s) 166 Flash application using exe file 167 Define Password for EXE file 168 Read Configuration Data 173

This feature is available only in the Multimedia Protector <u>Premium</u> 56 version.
 <u>Concurrent user</u> 23 is not supported when the main application is an EXE file.

4.10.12.4 FLV (Video)

The FLV format is a format that can be directly used by <u>importing</u> the file. If you have an application which uses FLV and the files are not displayed, convert the FLV file to SWF using <u>http://www.moyea.com</u>

AVI, MPEG, Quicktime and other formats can be converted - see details 179.

• At this time only **one** FLV video can be played per MMF file. The video will play only on a PC, not on a CD / DVD recorder connected to TV. Streaming is not supported. For Trouble Shooting see also - FLV file does not load and

If you have multiple FLV files to secure then:

- Save each FLV file in a separate database This feature can be used if you <u>split the</u> project into several databases. 305
- Use one of the menus Multimedia Protector provides (Advanced Menu, Basic Menu) or any other menu like <u>CDMenuPro</u> [284] or <u>Quick Menu Builder</u>. [286]

A sample for flash file protection is provided with flv.mme

4.10.12.5 HTML

Pure HTML files can not be protected directly. There are 2 options depending on the way you are using the HTML files.

Protect html files

If you have a project with HTML files only, you need a tool which compresses all HTML files in one single EXE file like <u>HTML Executable</u> or <u>http://www.ebookcompiler.com/</u>, which comes with an own Viewer. Multimedia Protector now provides licensing and copy

protection options. Just import the EXE file - see Secure standalone exe file

The HTML files are protected with the same security level like EXE files

Protect flash project which includes some html files

If the protection of the flash file is the main issue and HTML files should just be invoked, <u>import all files</u> (including the HTML files).

In your flash code you have to add special commands:

- Extract all files from the encrypted database to a temporary folder with the command: <u>http://FILE:testfile.html\$\$COPY</u>. You have to use this command for each html file
- Start the first HTML file with the command <u>http://FILE:default.html\$\$START</u>

The HTML files are loaded into the Browser and they are not protected

For all commands see - Flash application using EXE files 167

4.10.12.6 JPG (Image)

To use JPG files, they have to be played by a flash file. A free flash <u>Photo Album</u> [144] is provided. Otherwise, any .swf file allowing to display JPG files can be used like the free versions from <u>Airtight</u> [150].

A sample for jpg files with a photo-album is provided with photo-album1-demo.mme and photo-album2-demo.mme.

For more details see chapter Photo Album 14.

4.10.12.7 MP3 (Music)

To use MP3 files, they have to be played by a flash music player. A free flash <u>music</u> <u>player</u> [14] is provided. Otherwise, any .swf file allowing to play mp3 files can be used.

1 A sample for mp3 files with the player is provided - use *mp3-demo.mme*.

The audio files will play only on a PC and not not on a CD / DVD recorder or mp3 player.

4.10.12.8 PDF

There are several ways to convert PDF files. After converting the file, just $\underline{import}|_{83}$ it and define it as a the starting file. If you need multiple PDF files to distribute, use the \underline{menu} <u>generator</u> $\underline{273}$ to select the files within a menu.

PDF Conversion Tool

We recommend using pdf2swf which offers a lot of functionality and is free. It also offers a batch conversion of pdf files, so you can convert all files in a directory and subdirectory into a batch process. The navigation bar to browse the PDF file is provided with the Advanced Menu [274].

Details: PDF conversion 184

Download a sample - the Multimedia Protector Tutorial with over 200 pages and links inside the PDF document - converted with swftools and using the Advanced Menu - <u>Click here to download</u> and unzip the file to a folder. Start mp-pdf.exe.

Using a Printer Driver

This option allows printing the secure file, but links within the PDF file will be lost. It adds a nice navigation bar. The user can select and copy text but the format is lost.

For details using a printer driver see converting <u>Office Documents</u>. The printer does not support hyperlinks. If you need hyperlinks, use the PDF Conversion tool instead.

Not all options of a PDF file are supported. The converted version is like an image of the PDF file. It does not support filling out forms or any other active content including bookmarks.

Download a sample - the Multimedia Protector Tutorial with over 200 pages and links inside the PDF document - converted with Flashpaper - <u>Click here to download</u> and unzip the file to a folder. Start mp-flashpaper.exe.

See also

PDF conversion 184 Office Documents - disable printing 186

1 Interactive PDF files with forms can not be converted.

4.10.12.9 PDF with Hyperlink

If you have PDF documents with hyperlinks to **other** PDF documents (Hyperlinks inside one document will work without special settings), perform the following steps:

- 1. Convert PDF to flash using PDF2SWF 1841
- 2. After converting all files to flash, copy only the flash files to a new directory which you would import as .
- 3. Set the option: Converting hyperlinks after SWF ending 87
- 4. If you use relative paths (links like\path1\file1.pdf), set the option: <u>Always use</u>
- 5. Use the Advanced Menu 274 as described below

A Hyperlink must not contain an umlaut (äüö) or any other special characters like %\$

Adding a toolbar (browse, zoom, print)

The toolbar for the converted PDF file is provided by the Advanced Menu 274.

If you have just one PDF file then use the files provided in the folder ..\converter\swftools. You need 3 files for your project:

- Advanced-menu.swf
- config.xml
- doc.swf

Rename your converted PDF file to docu.swf and <u>import</u> all files. Select the file advanced-menu.swf as start file and check the option: *Use advanced menu*. It will add browse buttons to navigate to the next page and a scroll bar to scroll through the page.

한 Multanedia Potector - PDF Sangle () : 씨 국 국	
Viniting the second sec	
Multimedia Protector	
© 2037 Minope Computer Systems OnthH	

View PDF file with toolbar

It is possible to change different settings.

⊟ Add a Print Button

To add a print button edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free $\frac{\text{XML Editor}}{258}$) and change the entry **print** to *True*.

250



Disable Zoom In / Out

To disable the zoom option, edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free \underline{XML} <u>Editor</u> and change the entry **<zoom>** to *false*.



Start with different size

By default, the converted PDF is loaded with 100%. It is possible to start the document with another size like 150% or 75%. Edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free $\frac{\text{XML Editor}_{258}}{\text{SML Editor}_{258}}$) and change the entry **<zoomin**> to eg. 150 (without % sign).

Download a sample - the Multimedia Protector Tutorial with over 200 pages and links inside the PDF document - converted with swftools and using the Advanced Menu - <u>Click here to download</u> and unzip the file to a folder. Start mp-pdf.exe.

4.10.12.1 (PPT (PowerPoint)

There are two different approaches to protect Powerpoint files.

Using the PowerPoint Viewer

Using the PowerPoint Viewer is easy to handle and adds the same protection level like protecting EXE files [165]. The PowerPoint Viewer is provided for free and is included in the main PowerPoint installation.



- All animations including video and audio are supported
- No conversion necessary
- PowerPoint Viewer is free
- One PPT can invoke another PPT (Link from PPT A to PPB tested with Office 2007)

- Not the same strong protection level like a converted flash file will offer
- No menu can be added to select different presentations
- As all files have to be extracted from a database, the size for the project should not exceed 100 MB. You can protect multiple PPT files with each 100 MB in size by splitting the project into several databases [305]
- Printing can not be disabled (always enabled)
- Macros inside PPT are not supported

PPT Conversion to Flash

The PPT files can be converted into flash and therefore are protected with the highest security level, which Multimedia Protector offers for flash files. 25

+

- Highest protection level
- A menu 273 can be used to start different presentations
- The size of the complete project does not matter as files are loaded into memory only when required
- Printing can be enabled or disabled
- _
- · Some special animation effects will not work with converters
- The file has to be converted
- The converter is not free
- Macros inside PPT are not supported

<u>What is the difference between Multimedia Protector and the Microsoft IRM</u> (Information Rights Management) system in Office 2007?

The IRM system in Office 2007 allows to specify security options per user. You need a server to handle the user information and each user must install the IRM Client on his PC. This is typically a possible approach to protect a document inside the own company. If the document should be distributed, the restrictions to have a connection to the IRM server and to install the IRM client should be considered. Multimedia Protector protects PPT files without the need to install an additional software or to have an Internet connection.

See also

Use PowerPoint Viewer 177 PPT Conversion to Flash PPT with Hyperlink 191 PPT - Disable Printing 186
4.10.12.1 PPT with Hyperlink

There are a lot of PPT conversion tools available with different pricing and different conversion options. Find your favorite tool at http://www.masternewmedia.org/2004/04/14/powerpoint to flash conversion tools.htm

We recommend using a tool which generates one singe SWF file and not a file per PPT slide like <u>http://www.wondershare.com</u> (PPT2Flash), <u>http://www.presentationpro.com/</u> or <u>http://www.cpslabs.net</u>

If you have PPT documents you want to convert, perform the following steps:

- 1. Convert PPT to flash using a PPT converter that supports hyperlinks
- 2. If you have multiple, large videos convert it to SWF see video conversion 179
- 3. After converting all files to flash, copy only the flash files to a new directory which you would import so
- 4. Use the <u>Advanced Menu</u> as described below if the PowerPoint converter does **not** support a navigation toolbar (most of the converters will add such a navigation bar automatically)

□ Using Advainced Menu to add a navigation toolbar

Adding a toolbar (browse, zoom, print)

The toolbar for the converted PPT file is provided by the Advanced Menu 274.

If you have just **one** PPT file then use the files provided in the folder ... \converter\swftools. You need 3 files for your project:

- Advanced-menu.swf
- config.xml
- doc.swf

Rename your converted PPT file to docu.swf and <u>import</u> all files. Select the file advanced-menu.swf as start file and check the option: *Use advanced menu*. It will add browse buttons to navigate to the next page and a scroll bar to scroll through the page.

♥ Multin	wola Hotector - FDF Sangle ले, प्	
	The sector	
	Multimedia Protector	
	© 2007 Minoge Computer Systems GmbH	

View PPT file with toolbar

It is possible to change different settings.

Add a Print Button

To add a print button edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free $\frac{\text{XML Editor}}{258}$) and change the entry **<print>** to *True*.



Disable Zoom In / Out

To disable the zoom option, edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free \underline{XML} <u>Editor</u> and change the entry **<zoom>** to *false*.



■ Start with different size

By default, the converted PPT is loaded with 100%. It is possible to start the document with another size like 150% or 75%. Edit the config.xml file (with any editor or use free $\underline{XML \ Editor}$) and change the entry $\langle zoomin \rangle$ to eg. 150 (without % sign).

4.10.12.1:SWF (Flash)

The flash format (.swf) is the main format which is used by Multimedia Protector.

Flash files running in the flash player 8.0 are supported. They can be directly imported as

1 A sample for flash file protection is provided with *flash-demo.mme*

4.10.12.1 WAV

After converting the file, just $\underline{\text{import}}_{83}$ it and define it as a the starting file. If you need multiple WAV files to distribute, use the <u>menu generator</u> $\underline{273}$.

WAV Conversion Tool

You will find a lot of tools by searching in Google. We describe one tool more in detail. It is a collection of SWF manipulation and creation utilities - and it is free (released under GPL) - www.swftools.com .

Download the Windows Version swftools-0.7.0.exe at <u>http://www.swftools.org/download.html</u>

You find a online help on the swftools web site - but here are the most useful commands.

Program to convert PDF to SWF: **wav2swf.exe** - online help: <u>http://www.swftools.org/</u> wav2swf.html

Standard Conversion

This converts a single WAV file.

wav2swf.exe file.wav

or if you .SWF file should get a new name

wav2swf.exe -o filenew.swf file.wav

4.10.12.1 WORD, VISIO, EXCEL, Office Documents

All documents that are **printable**, like Word, Visio, Excel, can be converted into flash with a printer driver. It is called Macromedia FlashPaper2 and can be downloaded and bought at the Macromedia Website <u>http://www.macromedia.com/software/flashpaper/</u>.

The printer driver creates a flash file with an own tool bar, which allows **navigating through the file and printing the file**. It is easy to use, but hyperlinks will be removed.

If you do not want to allow printing the content, see - Office Documents - disable printing 186

Instead of using the printer driver, **Word files or other office documents** can be saved as PDF - see <u>PDF conversion</u> $\begin{bmatrix} 1\\ 184 \end{bmatrix}$ - which offers more options like the printer driver method.

After converting the file, just $\underline{\text{import}}_{83}$ it and define it as a the starting file. If you need multiple office documents to distribute, use the $\underline{\text{menu generator}}_{273}$.

If Excel has VB macros or formula, you need a source code integration with Licence Protector - see <u>www.Licence-Protector.com</u> or contact <u>sales@mirage-systems.de</u> for an Excel Add-in.

Download a sample - the Multimedia Protector Tutorial with over 200 pages and links inside the PDF document - converted with Flashpaper - <u>Click here to download</u> and unzip the file to a folder. Start mp-flashpaper.exe.

🕖 If you use flashpaper and need a menu, you have to use the Basic Menu

See also

Word with Hyperlink 194

Office Documents - disable printing

4.10.12.1 Word with Hyperlink

Word 2007 comes with a free Add-In, which creates a PDF file and it supports hyperlinks. Just select File, Save As PDF. If this option is missing, you can <u>download the Add-In</u> <u>here</u> or search in the Word Online help for PDF.

Some PDF Converters have inbuilt support for Hyperlinks. If you use a converter, which does not support it, you can use the freeware tool PDF-T-Maker.

PDF T-Maker

Word Documents with Hyperlinks to other Word Documents need a special converter. This converter is a plug-in in Word and creates a Postscript file with hyperlinks.

Technically, there are these steps:

- 1. Create Postscript file with PDF-T-Maker
- 2. Create PDF file, using the Postscript file, with any PDF tool. This step can be done automatically after step 1
- 3. Convert PDF to flash using PDF2SWF
- 4. After converting all files to flash, copy only the flash files to a new directory which you would import so
- 5. If you use relative paths (links like\path1\file1doc), set the option: <u>Always use</u> relative path ar

You can download the converter here: <u>http://www.transcom.de/transcom/en/2004_pdf-t-maker.htm</u>

After installing the plug-in in Word, you have to configure it:

- General Tab. Check: Convert Cross document links, thereby convert .doc in filename into .swf
- Default Postscript Printer: If you do not have a printer installed, either find one on the web page described in the pdf-t-maker documentation or install one that comes with Windows (e.g. **Brother HL-2400C BR SCRIPT2** use LPT3 to print as a virtual device)
- Default Destiller TAB: If you have Acrobat installed, define Acrodist.exe or the distiller of your PDF tool. If you do not have any PDF tool, download PDF creator: <u>http://www. pdfforge.org/products/pdfcreator/</u>

If you need a batch conversion, e.g. conversion of all files on a specific subdirectory, please contact <u>www.transcom.de</u> and ask for the batch conversion option.

A Hyperlink may not contain an umlaut (äüö) or any other special characters like %\$

4.10.13 Which files can not be protected?

If you have applications (executables) without Source Code, see <u>How to protect an</u> <u>application</u> [174]. If you have the Source Code of the application see: <u>How to protect an</u> <u>application written . NET, VB, Delphi, C or other development languages?</u> [174]

Excel - if VB macros or formulas have to be protected, you need a source code integration with Licence Protector - see <u>www.Licence-Protector.com</u> or contact <u>sales@mirage-systems.de</u> for an Excel Add-in.

HTML files and all other file types that cannot be converted to flash cannot be protected. If the HTML file is just used as a start file to invoke a flash file then simply use this flash file as the <u>start file</u> and not the HTML file.

See chapter <u>How to protect?</u> [242] to get a list of supported file types for protection.

1. All files will play only on a PC, **not on a CD / DVD recorder** connected to TV.

4.10.14 How to make a bootable CD / DVD

Your can generate a CD / DVD which starts the Multimedia Player directly after the CD / DVD is inserted.

- Save the project with the option Save for CD and create the files for distribution and create the files fo
- Copy all files from the folder deploy 160 to the CD/DVD
- You can add an installer which allows installing the files from CD to the hard disk drive

() If you use an own menu before you start the Multimedia Player then change the **autorun.inf** file.

Autorun.inf

[autorun]

open=flash-demo.exe ← File which is automatically started after the CD is inserted Name=Multimedia Edition - Flash Demo ← Name which is displayed in the Explorer. Default is <u>Product Name</u>

4.10.15 Which flash version is supported?

Multimedia Protector

258

The Multimedia Player supports Flash version 9.

4.10.16 How to make a CD menu / start menu

.Multimedia Protector offers 2 applications written in flash, where you can create your own CD or start menus. For details see <u>Menu Creator</u> 273.

4.10.17 How to start different MMF files with one Multimedia Player?

It is possible to have just one Multimedia Player installed on a network and use this Multimedia Player with different MMF (data) files.

Start the the Multimedia Player with the parameter -f filename.mmf

Sample: c:\programs\myapp\flash-demo.exe -f c:\programs\app2\powerpoint.mmf

The license file can either be stored on the folder of the mmf file (recommended), but also on the folder of the Multimedia Player.

Special Considerations

U If you use the option: <u>Advanced Protection</u> then you can only invoke a database (mmf file) which was made for the **same Multimedia Player version**.

Sample

- A.mmf was made with version Multimedia Protector 1.3
- B.mmf was made with version Multimedia Protector 1.4

The Multimedia Player from version 1.4 could not start A.mmf and Multimedia Player version 1.3 could not start B.mmf.

If you do **not** use <u>Advanced Protection</u> $\boxed{74}$ there is no guarantee that a Multimedia Player could invoke databases from different program versions. Always install the latest Multimedia Player to be sure that all new features from a new version are supported.

4.10.18 How to edit an XML file

A lot of configuration files (e.g. the file for the <u>menu creator</u>) 273 are in xml format. You can edit this file using any editor like Notepad or Word. As an alternative, there is a nice freeware tool for xml files which you can download here.

http://www.snapfiles.com/get/xmlnotepad.html

Start the XML notepad and select *File*, *Open*. You will see the XML file content which is structured. The content can be easily modified and saved.



4.10.19 How to secure Macromedia Director / Authorware / other flash tools

If you do not use specific functionalities of Macromedia Director / Authorware, convert the project to flash and use Multimedia Protector.

Otherwise you can make a DLL integration - use Licence Protector source code integration - <u>www.Licence-Protector.com.</u> Search in the FAQ area for a Director / Authorware Source code sample.

4.10.20 How to protect an application written in .NET, VB, Delphi, C or other development languages?

You can use Multimedia Protector $\underline{EXE Protection}$ if you do **not** have one of the following requirements

260

- No modules only one application which has to be licensed
- No floating / concurrent user license
- Maximum security and flexibility of the licensing
- Transferring a license from PC A to PC B

These additional requirements are covered with Licence Protector source code integration product - see website <u>www.Licence-Protector.com</u> for details and download the trial version.

For protection with Licence Protector you need the Source Code and development work is necessary.

4.10.21 Can I use my own Player

No, only the Multimedia Player can be used. If you have created an own player using Director, Authorware or other development tools, see How to secure Macromedia Director / Authorware / other flash tools 259.

If you have just a menu which invokes other files, use the menu creator 273.

4.10.22 How can I view a swf (flash) file?

If you want to view a flash file (extension .swf), either **drag the file into the Browser** or use a flash viewer.

View file within Browser

To drag the flash file into the Browser, open your Browser like Internet Explorer, minimize it, select the flash file with the left mouse button and drag it into the Browser.

View file with Flash Viewer

Download free flash viewer SWF Opener: http://www.browsertools.net/downloads1.html

4.10.23 Where can I buy Multimedia Protector?

Select your Version

Premium or Standard version? Check out the <u>feature comparison matrix</u> to see which version is right for you.

Buy Serial Number

You can buy Multimedia Protector online and instantly use it. Buy Multimedia Protector.

After the order process you will get a Serial Number and a download link. See <u>How to</u> <u>activate Multimedia Protector</u> how to unlock the trial version.

4.10.24 How do I uninstall Multimedia Protector

To uninstall Multimedia Protector

- Select Start, Control Panel
- Add/Remove Programs

Search for Multimedia Protector 2.0 or Multimedia Protector Premium 2.0 and select Remove.

4.10.25 I found no answer for my questions

If you did not find an answer for your questions in the tutorial search in the extensive Online Knowledge Base.

Browse Online Knowledge Base

4.11 Installation Manager for Harddisk and Network

The <u>Premium</u> [56] version comes with a ready to go installation manager. It allows installing the files from CD or download link to the hard disk. It also offers a network installation for Client PC's. The installer files can be found on the folder \Multimedia Protector Premium 2.0 installer.

The installation manager includes the following features:

- Copies all files to a specified directory
- Adds the necessary user rights to the specified directory
- Copies the player, database mmf file and the license file to the specified directory, including an icon file
- Adds a program manager group and an entry within the program manager group to start the Multimedia Player
- Adds uninstall information
- Installation dialogs are available in multiple languages

You can change the icon on the desktop and in the program manager group with an own bespoke icon.

The installer consists of 2 files:

- **setup.exe** (installer file for single user installation) or **setup-network.exe** (for network installation)
- setup.ini (configuration file for installer)

Copy these 2 files from the main installation folder ...\Multimedia Protector Premium (2.0) **installer** to the deploy folder of your project. Then modify the <u>setup.ini file</u> with any editor. The name of the installer can be renamed, e.g. to setup-abc.exe. The name of the ini file must be setup.ini.

If you want to start the installer directly after a CD is inserted, modify the file autorun. inf.

[autorun] icon=flash-demo.exe open=**setup.exe** Name=Multimedia Protector - Flash Demo

💶 This feature is available only in the Multimedia Protector Premium $|_{56}$ version.

See also

Configuration File - Setup.ini Single User Installation 264 Network Installation 266

4.11.1 Configuration File - Setup.ini

The configuration file defines options which are displayed during installation and allows to customizes the names and default values.

Configuration options for setup.ini

Just overwrite the default values within the setup.ini file. The file has different sections (indicated with [SectionName])

■ [SETUP]

This section defines the program name displayed during installation and default values.

- AppName=My Multimedia Player Name of your application which is displayed during installation
 AppVersion=3.0 Version number of your application which is displayed during installation.
- AppPublisher=Universal Software Name of your company
- DefaultDirName=my application Default name for directory. You can also define a sub folder, e.g. Universal Software\application1 The real acts would then be a preservemely trivered. Software\application1
 - The real path would then be ... programs Universal Software application 1
- DefaultGroupName=Smart Program Group Default name for program manager group

■ [ProgManGroup]

This section defines addition entries in the program manager group.

ShowLicenseInfo = true or false

Adds an entry in the program manger group to invoke the <u>License Viewer</u>^[289]. This is an inbuilt Administration interface where the end user can add new licenses. It is highly recommended for network installations to add this option.

ShowReadmeFile = true or false

Adds an entry in the program manger group to invoke a ReadMe file. The ReadMe file has to be defined in the section [Files], readme 263.

■ [Files]

This section defines the files which have to be copied

want to use the icon of the Multimedia Player

- exe-Filename=flash-demo.exe Exe filename of the player (must match the name in the deploy folder)
- mmf-Filename=flash-demo.mmf Filname of the database (must match the name in the deploy folder)
- Iic-Filename=flash-demo.lic Filname of the license file (must match the name in the deploy folder)
- ico-Filename=mpplayer.ico Define a custom icon which should appear in the program manager group. If you

Ħ

, use the file mpplayer.ico as

readme-xxx = readme-xxx.txt

provided

This allows to display a readme file after the installation. The readme file must be in txt or doc format.

xxx is the language identifier. The following languages are supported.

readme-ces=Czech readme-dan=Danish readme-deu=German - sample: readme-deu=readme-deu.txt readme-dut=Dutch readme-enu=English - sample: readme-enu=readme-enu.doc readme-esp=Spanish readme-fra=French readme-ita=Italian readme-nor=Norwegian readme-por=Portugues

Note: As you do not know, which language the user selects during installation, you should specify for each language a readme file, even if it is always the same file.

The readme file can be added to the program manager group, so that the file can be viewed after the installation is done. See section [ProgManGroup], ShowReadmeFile 263].

additionalx = *.bat

This command allows to copy additional files. You can either specify one file (e.g. doc-course1.pdf) or a complete group of files (*.pdf). A maximum of 10 different files can be copied. These files are copied to the main installation folder. They are not protected.

```
additional1=*.bat
additional2=doc-course1.pdf
additional3=course*-lesson*.avi
additional4=
additional5=
additional6=
additional7=
additional8=
additional9=
additional10=
```

■ [Uninstall]

This section provides uninstall information using the Windows standard uninstall options (control panel, add/remove programs).

- AppComments=(C) 2007 Universal Software, Inc. Uninstallation comment
- AppContact=office@universal-soft.com Contact information
- AppPublisher=Universal Software, Inc Name of your company
- AppPublisherURL=http://www.universal-soft.com Main Homepage URL
- AppSupportURL=http://www.universal-soft.com/support URL for support page. If not available use main homepage URL
- AppUpdatesURL=http://www.universal-soft.com/downloads URL for Update page. If not available use main homepage URL

4.11.2 Single User Installation

If you want to offer a **single user installation** (e.g. install from CD to the hard disk) then use the file **setup.exe**.

The installer performs the following tasks:

- Asks for an installation directory
- Copies all files to a specified directory if an file already exists, the file is replaced
- Adds the necessary user rights to the specified directory
- Copies the player, database mmf file and the license file to the specified directory,

including an icon file

- If selected, places an icon on the desktop
- Adds a program manager group and an entry within the program manager group to start the Multimedia Player
- Adds uninstall information
- Starts the application after installation

Screens of the installer

Below find the screens which appear during installation.

Setup-Sp	rache auswählen	
12	Wählen Sie die Sprache Installation benutzt werd	
	English	
		OK Abbrechen
🔒 Setup	- My Program 2.1	
		Welcome to the My Program 2.1 Setup Wizard
		This will install My Program 2.1 on your computer.
		It is recommended that you close all other applications before continuing.
		Click Next to continue, or Cancel to exit Setup.
-		
	5	
		Next > Cancel

	Setup - My Program 2.1
	Select Destination Location Where should My Program 2.1 be installed?
	Setup will install My Program 2.1 into the following folder.
	To continue, click Next. If you would like to select a different folder, click Browse.
	C:\Program Files\My Program Browse
	At least 1,0 MB of free disk space is required.
	ALleast 1,0 Mb of free disk space is required.
	< Back Next > Cancel
l	
1	🕞 Setup - My Program 2.1
1	Setup - My Program 2.1 Select Start Menu Folder Where should Setup place the program's shortcuts?
	Select Start Menu Folder
	Select Start Menu Folder Where should Setup place the program's shortcuts?
	Select Start Menu Folder Image: Construct the program's shortcuts? Image: Where should Setup place the program's shortcuts? Image: Construct the program's shortcuts in the following Start Menu folder.
	Select Start Menu Folder Where should Setup place the program's shortcuts? Image: Setup will create the program's shortcuts in the following Start Menu folder. To continue, click Next. If you would like to select a different folder, click Browse.
	Select Start Menu Folder Where should Setup place the program's shortcuts? Image: Setup will create the program's shortcuts in the following Start Menu folder. To continue, click Next. If you would like to select a different folder, click Browse.
	Select Start Menu Folder Where should Setup place the program's shortcuts? Image: Setup will create the program's shortcuts in the following Start Menu folder. To continue, click Next. If you would like to select a different folder, click Browse.
1	Select Start Menu Folder Where should Setup place the program's shortcuts? Image: Setup will create the program's shortcuts in the following Start Menu folder. To continue, click Next. If you would like to select a different folder, click Browse.
	Select Start Menu Folder Where should Setup place the program's shortcuts? Image: Setup will create the program's shortcuts in the following Start Menu folder. To continue, click Next. If you would like to select a different folder, click Browse.
	Select Start Menu Folder Where should Setup place the program's shortcuts? Image: Setup will create the program's shortcuts in the following Start Menu folder. To continue, click Next. If you would like to select a different folder, click Browse.

🔁 Setup - My Program 2.1	
Select Additional Tasks Which additional tasks should be performed?	
Select the additional tasks you would like Setup to perform while installing 2.1, then click Next.	My Program
Additional icons:	
Create a desktop icon	
Create a Quick Launch icon	
< Back Next >	Cancel
🔁 Setup - My Program 2.1	

click Back if you	u want to review	/ or	
			•
			~
	< Back	< Back Install	< Back Install Ca



4.11.3 Network Installation

If you want to offer a **network installation** (e.g. install from CD to the hard disk on the server) then use the file **setup-network.exe** instead of setup.exe.

Server Installation

The installer performs the following tasks:

- Asks for an installation directory
- Copies all files to a specified directory **on the server -** if an file already exists, the file is replaced
- Adds the necessary user rights to the specified directory
- Copies the player, database mmf file and the license file to the specified directory, including an icon file
- If selected, places an icon on the desktop
- Adds a program manager group and an entry within the program manager group to start the Multimedia Player
- Adds uninstall information
- Starts the application after installation
- Creates 2 files for network Client setups folder ...\install\setup-client.exe and setupclient-advanced.exe.

The server installation can be started on any Client / Workstation PC. There is no need to start the installation on the server.

Client / Workstation setup

Each PC has to run a Client / Workstation setup, using **setup-client.exe**, which performs the following tasks:

- If selected, places an icon on the desktop
- Adds a program manager group and an entry within the program manager group to start the Multimedia Player
- Adds uninstall information
- Starts the application after installation

All files reside on the server.

Advanced Client / Workstation setup

It is possible to copy the mmf (file) database to the local PC. This makes sense if huge flash files are used and network connection is an issue. The disadvantage is, that no central installation is available and updates have to be done on each Client PC. Multimedia Protector just loads the file, which is played via the network. The size of the database does not matter - only the size of the files which are loaded into the Multimedia Player.

Each PC has to run a Client / Workstation setup, using **setup-client-advanced.exe**, which performs the following tasks:

- Asks for an installation directory
- Copies the mmf file to a specified directory on the local PC
- If selected, places an icon on the desktop
- Adds a program manager group and an entry within the program manager group to start the Multimedia Player
- Adds uninstall information
- Starts the application after installation

The Multimedia Player resides on the server, the database is on each local machine.

Screens of the installer

Below find the screens which appear during installation.

Setup-Sp	orache auswählen
12	Wählen Sie die Sprache aus, die während der Installation benutzt werden soll:
	English
	OK Abbrechen



🔂 Setup - My Program 2.1	
Select Start Menu Folder Where should Setup place the program's shortcuts?	
Setup will create the program's shortcuts in the following St	art Menu folder.
To continue, click Next. If you would like to select a different folder,	click Browse.
My Program	Browse
< Back N	ext > Cancel
🔂 Setup - My Program 2.1	
Select Additional Tasks Which additional tasks should be performed?	
Select the additional tasks you would like Setup to perform while ins 2.1, then click Next.	talling My Program
Additional icons:	
Create a desktop icon	
Create a Quick Launch icon	
< Back N	ext > Cancel

272

🔁 Setup - My Program 2.1	x
Ready to Install Setup is now ready to begin installing My Program 2.1 on your computer.	B
Click Install to continue with the installation, or click Back if you want to review or change any settings.	
Destination location: C:\Program Files\My Program Start Menu folder: My Program	
-	
4 F	
< Back Install Cancel	
🔂 Setup - My Program 2.1	x
Completing the My Program 2.1 Setup Wizard	
Setup has finished installing My Program 2.1 on your computer. The application may be launched by selecting the installed icons.	-

Click Finish to exit Setup.

Finish

4.12 Menu Creator

Multimedia Protector comes with a Menu Creator. The Menu Creator lets you create own flash menus which can be used as the starting point of a CD/DVD or any download.

There are 2 menus. Select one depending on your needs.

If you have an already existing menu (flash or EXE menu) or need a different design, see chapter Other Menus 284.

Advanced Menu

The advanced menu is very flexible and lets you create menus with submenus (e.g. menu English Course 1 has submenus Lesson 1 and Lesson 2). It offers a toolbar which allows zooming and navigating. It is also multilingual.

You should use the menu for \underline{PDF}_{183} and \underline{PPT}_{186} files, as well as for single $\underline{MP3}_{177}$ files and you can use it for any flash files.

View Advanced Menu



Basic Menu

This menu is the best choice, if you have only a few menu items and flash files or only one single flv file.

View Basic Menu



Samples of protected files



4.12.1 Advanced Menu

It can be found on the directory ..\Multimedia Protector\2.0**\Add-Ons\MenuCreator\advanced.**

The advanced menu is very flexible and lets you create menus with submenus (e.g. menu English Course 1 has submenus Lesson 1 and Lesson 2). It offers a toolbar which allows zooming and navigating. It is also multilingual. You should use the menu for PDF_{183} and PPT_{186} files as well as for single $MP3_{177}$ files and you can use it for any flash files. You can define

- Intro flash file which plays at the start of the menu
- Logo file and location of the logo
- Menu and Submenu title
- Language of the menu title
- Start a flash file different file per language
- Display toolbar to zoom in and out as well as to browse forward and backward
- Display print button
- Display scroll bar
- Size to load a file (e.g. 50%, 100% or 200%)

O The menu creator can be used with Multimedia Protector, but it is not allowed to distribute the files as a standalone application without Multimedia Protector.

If you use the menu outside of the Multimedia Player or with the evaluation version of Multimedia Protector, it will be displayed in red to indicate the demo mode. You can test the menu (see <u>how can I view a flash file</u> [260]?) but you can use it only with the Multimedia Player.



4.12.1.1 Basic Settings

The structure of the menu is defined with the file **config.xml.** It can be modified using any editor. If you do not have an XML Editor see <u>How to edit an XML file</u> [258]. The name of the menu application is **advanced-menu.swf**.

Basic Settings

Define the basic settings which are used as default values for the complete menu including intro file and logo. Make a copy of the config.xml file and edit the file.

All items like doc or default are case sensitive.

🐻 config.xml - XML Notepad			
	File Edit View Insert Tools Help		
		<u>-+++++-</u>	₹≡ ∓≣
	Structure	Values	
	⊡ [■] t <mark>=</mark> menu		
	🗠 💊 expandir	right	
	🔶 align	left	
	\cdots \land locale	en	
	👓 \land toolbar	true	
	\cdots \land print	true	
	• • effects	true	
	🔶 doc	ppt/welcome-mme.swf	
	🗝 🔶 default	true	
	···· 🔶 logo	images/mirage-small.jpg	
	🗣 logo_x	650	
	···· ♦ logo_y	50	
	主 💼 menu		
	🗄 💼 menu		

expandir

Displays a submenu item on the right or left side. Values: *right*

align Position of the menu item Values: *right*

Iocale

Default language of the menu

Values: en (English), de (German), it (Italian), fr (French)

toolbar

Enables the toolbar for all menu items by default. The toolbar allows navigating forward and backward within a document and zooming the document. This is necessary for converted PDF and PPT files.



Values: true, false

print

Enables the print icon for all menu items by default. The first printer icon prints the page which is displayed; the second printer icon prints all pages



Values: true, false

scrollbars

By default, horizontal or vertical scrollbars are automatically added if required. You can override the default values using

one of the following values: none - never display a scrollbar

v - add vertical scrollbar

h - add horizontal scrollbar

Path and filename of the intro file. It must be a flash file (swf). Leave this field empty to have no intro file. The entry *default* must be set to true

default

Loads the intro file, specified with doc. This file is started **once** when the menu loads. logo

Path and filename of the logo. It must be a flash file. It must be a jpg file. Leave this field empty to have no logo file. You have to specify the position of the logo with *logo_x* and *logo_y*.

logo_x

Horizontal position of the logo in pixel. The logo has to be specified with the entry logo

logo_y

Vertical position of the logo in pixel. The logo has to be specified with the entry logo.

4.12.1.2 Define Menu Headlines

First define the <u>basic settings</u> 276. All values from there are used as default values for the menu headlines - that is: as long as you do not explicitly define a value in the menu headline, the value from the basic setting definition will be used.

Multimedia Edition - protectable files 🖌	Sample Menu Structure
	Headline 2





🖃 id

Number of the headline. The headlines are ordered by this number.

Values: 1 to n. Depending on the length of the headline only 4-5 headlines might be possible

Ξ Χ

Horizontal position of the headline in pixel

🖃 у

Vertical position of the headline in pixel

orient

Defines, how the submenu is expanded - either horizontal or vertical Values: h, v

orient = \mathbf{h}



Multimedia Edition - protectable files PDF files truc Image: Point of the second s

🖃 doc

Path and filename of the file that is started, when the user clicks on the headline. If no file should be started, leave this value empty.

🖃 title

You have to specify the title (name of the headline) for **each language** you want to use. The title entry has several sub-entries.

Example: If you want to offer the menu in 2 languages, you have to add 2 title items, and for each title item you have to specify the following sub-entries.

locale

Language of the headline Values: en (English), de (German), it (Italian), fr (French) name

Name of the title in the language, specified with local

4.12.1.3 Toolbars and language selection

Enter topic text here.

4.12.1.4 Include Menu in Project

To include the menu in the project, just copy the files:

- advanced-menu.swf
- config.xml

as well as all used images and swf files to your data source directory and import the files in the screen - Data Import and import and import and import and import and import and a source directory and import the files in the screen - Data Import and a source directory and import the files in the screen - Data Import and a source directory and import the files in the screen - Data Import and a source directory and import the files in the screen - Data Import and a source directory and import the files in the screen - Data Import and a source directory and import the files in the screen - Data Import and a source directory and import the files in the screen - Data Import and a source directory and a sour

4.12.2 Basic Menu

280

It can be found on the directory ...\Multimedia Protector\2.0\Add-

Ons\MenuCreator\basic. The file ...\demodata\document-demo.mme is a sample project which uses the Menu Creator.

	www.mirage-t	jiage	Define Logo and Heading
	Samples of	f protected files	
Define button image and label PDF-Prin	table		Video (FLV Format)
O PDF-not	printable		
O Word			
Tqq O			

The Logo, background image and background color, the menu header and the graphic as well as the label of the buttons can be defined. The menu is a multi-page menu. If more then 8 menu items are defined, a next button will appear to browse to the next page.

After starting a file, a button menu will appear at the right upper corner. If this button is pressed, the menu will be reloaded. It is possible to hide this button with the configuration option $< \underline{\text{menuButtonDisable}}_{281}$.

O The menu creator can be used with Multimedia Protector, but it is not allowed to distribute the files as a standalone application without Multimedia Protector.

See also

Define Menu 281 Include Menu in Project 283 How to edit an XML file 258 How can I view a flash file? 260

4.12.2.1 Define Menu

The structure of the menu is defined with the file **cat.xml**. It can be modified using any editor. If you do not have an XML Editor, see <u>How to edit an XML file</u> [258]. The name of the menu application is **advanced-menu.swf**.

Cat.xml

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" standalone="yes"?>

<subject>

<!--in logo tag, after image name, the first parameter indicates position (left, right, center) -->

<!--in header tag, after #, the first parameter indicates font size and second is color of image -->

<!--in background tag, after #, the first parameter indicates color of background --> <!-- (RED, 0x00000, flowers.jpg ...) -->

<!--in filename tag, after #, the first parameter indicates no scale .swf -->

<background>WHITE</background> Background Color, must be in capital letter
like RED, BLUE

or hex color code or image as an

background image

<menuButtonDisable>false</menuButtonDisable> **display** menu button for **all** menu items, true = do **not** display menu button for all menu items

<methods>

<coursetitle>PDF-Printable</coursetitle> Caption of the first button
<filename>files/flyer-cdc-print.swf</filename> File to start when button is

pressed. Must be from type SWF or FLV

<menuButtonDisable>false</menuButtonDisable> **display** menu button - valid only for this item, true = do not display menu button when this item is started </methods>

<coursetitle>PDF-not printable</coursetitle>

282

file is resized to fit in the window

```
<imgname>images/2.jpg</imgname>
 </methods>
 <methods>
   <coursetitle>Word</coursetitle>
   <filename>files/flyer-cdc-word.swf</filename>
   <imgname>images/3.jpg</imgname>
 </methods>
 <methods>
   <coursetitle>PPT</coursetitle>
   <filename>files/cti-data-ppt-noani.swf</filename>
   <imgname>images/4.jpg</imgname>
 </methods>
 <methods>
   <coursetitle>Video (FLV Format)</coursetitle>
   <filename>http://files/movie.flv</filename> 	 FLV needs a http and then the
foder and filename
   <imgname>images/5.jpg</imgname>
 </methods>
</subject>
```

O Never use an absolute path in the configuration file like c:\files which points to your disk drive on the PC. Always use a relative path like **files/flyer-cdc-word.swf**.

10 To start an flv file, you have to put http//: before the folder or filename

This is how the file looks like if you use a $\underline{XML \ Editor}_{258}$. It is very easy to change the items there.

🛛 XML Notepad - C:\Developmen	t\Licence Protector Multimedia Edition\Version 1.3\Ins				
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit ⊻iew Insert <u>W</u> indow	w <u>H</u> elp				
🗋 💕 🛃 🧉 (M 🕹 🖺 🔀					
Tree View XSL Output	Tree View XSL Output				
🥌 xml	version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" standalone:				
🖻 🧰 subject					
<pre>#comment</pre>	in logo tag, after image name the first p: in header tag, after # the first parament				
<pre>#comment</pre>	in background tag, after # the first para				
🥌 #comment	(RED, 0x00000, flowers.jpg)				
#comment	in filename tag, after # the first parame:				
	images/mirage.jpg#center Samples of protected files#18#0x3F4B5F				
± 6 background	WHITE				
🕂 🔍 🜔 menuButtonDisal	false				
E methods	DDF_Drintshle				
	files/flyer-cdc-print.swf				
🕀 💿 imgname	images/1.jpg				
🗄 💮 menuButtonI	false				
imethods	PDF-not printable				
filename	files/flyer-cdc.swf#noscale				
🕀 🥌 imgname	images/2.jpg				
🕀 menuButtonI	false				
🖻 🛁 methods 🕂 🛑 coursetitle	Word				
🕂 🥥 filename	files/flyer-cdc-word.swf				
🕀 🥌 imgname	images/3.jpg				
🕀 🕒 menuButtonI	false				
E coursetitle	PPT				
🗄 💽 filename	files/cti-data-ppt-noani.swf				
🗄 🥌 İmgname	images/4.jpg				
🗄 🕓 menuButtonI 🛨 💼 methods	false				
in incentous					

4.12.2.2 Include Menu in Project

Ë

To include the menu in the project, just copy the files:

- menu.swf
- cat.xml

as well as all used images and swf files to your data source directory and import the files in the screen - Data Import $\ensuremath{\mathbb{R}^3}$.

4.12.3 Other Menus

284

You can use any other menu. If you have an own flash application, which servers as a menu, nothing special has to be considered.

If you have a menu, which is an **EXE file**, you can invoke each file inside the database with a special command. See chapter <u>Start a specific file inside the database</u> [198].

Your menu would be **outside** the database (mmf file). A typical content of the CD or download would be

menu.exe (your menu file) mycourse.exe (the Multimedia Player) mycourse.lic (the license file) mycourse.mmf (the database)

The menu.exe would be the program which is started first. The menu exe can then invoke single files directly inside the database.

We have tested some menu programs and described the necessary settings.

- CDMenuPro 284
- Quick Menu Builder 286 (Freeware)

 \bigcirc This feature is available only in the Multimedia Protector Premium [56] version.

Start a specific file inside the database Flash application using exe file 167

4.12.3.1 CDMenuPro

This application can be downloaded at: <u>http://www.cdmenupro.de/</u>

This menu application creates an EXE file. You have to copy all Multimedia Protector files from the folder <u>Deploy</u> into the folder **CD_ROOT** of the CDMenuPro project.

After defining buttons to invoke e.g. lesson 1, lesson 2 you specify in the **properties dialog** of a button the command, to invoke the invoke the Multimedia Player.exe file.

In the line **Application** add the path and the name of the Multimedia Player.exe file. In the line **Parameter** add the command to load a flash file. See chapter Start a specific file inside the database to get all details for this command.

© 2008 Mirage Computer Systems GmbH

In the screenshot below, the file (Player) mycourse.exe is started and loads the file lesson1.swf.

Button Properties	X
Text Position, Style Linkage Sound	
Document, application or function to be linked to the button	
Document (e.g: *.doc, *.txt, *.pps, *.htm, *xds,)	
	Browse
Use file from a CDMenuPro ArchiveSafe	
Contract Con	
Name of the Player EXE file Appliq = *.bat *.com)	
%CURRENTDIR% \mycourse.exe	Browse
Parameter (runtime parameter)	
Hoad "lesson1 swf"	
Function: Command Line Parameter to load Open document, launch app lesson1.swf	Function Info
Displaying a loading message	

The sample below starts the player with a different database. This feature can be used if you split the project into several databases. 305

Text F	osition, Style Lin	kage Sound				
Docum	ent, application or	function to be li	nked to the butt	on		
	ent (e.g: *.doc, *.					
						Browse
3	Use file from a	a CDMenuPro Ar	chiveSafe		_	
e	Link button w	ith a link object				
E	Link button w	ith a pop-up mer	nu			
Applicat	ion (e.g.: *.exe *.ba	at *.com)	Name of the Player EXE			
	RENTDIR%\mycou	-	file			Browse
Paramet	er (runtime parame	ter)				
-f lessor	11.mmf	atabase				
Function	c _	to load				
Open d	ocument, launch a	application or op	en an internet si	te	• 1	Function In
			message		_	

List of all start options for the player 289

See also

Start a specific file inside the database Split project into several databases All command line options Other Menus 284

4.12.3.2 Quick Menu Builder

This application can be downloaded at: http://www.guickmenubuilder.com/

The menu application creates an EXE file. You have to copy all Multimedia Protector files from the folder **Deploy** field into the main folder of the menu.exe application.

After defining buttons to invoke e.g. lesson 1, lesson 2 you specify in the **Assign actions Tab** the Button action: **Execute...** to invoke the Multimedia Player.exe file.

In the line **Select a file** add the path and the name of the Multimedia Player.exe file. In the line **Parameters** add the command to load a flash file. See chapter <u>Start a specific</u>

file inside the database 198 to get all details for this command.

In the screenshot below, the file (Player) mycourse.exe is started and loads the file lesson1.swf.

Quick Menu Builder v1.31	
File Language Skins About	
1) Load files 2) Create buttons 3) Assign actions 4) Customize 5) Export menu	
Button List: Name: Start file Show as cap Start file Button style : Picture roll-over ✓ Button action: Execute ✓ ✓ Action Font Sounds Name of the Player EXE file Click Leave Parameters: Window Mini ✓ Mini Ocommand Line Parameter to Ommand Line Parameter to	wse w State imized

The sample below starts the player with a different database. This feature can be used if you split the project into several databases. 305

Quick Menu Builder	v1.31
File Language Skir 1) Load files 2) Create button	s About s 3)Assign actions 4) Customize 5) Export menu
Button List:	Name: Start file Show as caption
Start file	Button style : Picture roll-over
	Action Font Sounds Hint Player EXE Leave Select a file:
	Parameters: Window State I f lesson1.mmf Minimized
	Close menu after action?
	Button preview

List of all start options for the player 289

See also

Start a specific file inside the database Split project into several databases All command line options Other Menus 284

288
4.13 Multimedia Player

The Multimedia Player which is delivered with each product, is royalty free. This means that you can distribute the Multimedia Player to end users without any additional costs.

The basic options of the Multimedia Player are configured in the screen - <u>Player Options</u> ¹85</sup>. There are additional command line parameters (Start Options) and a build in end user interface for the license - the **License Viewer**.

Start Options 289

• License Viewer 289

4.13.1 Multimedia Player - Start Options

The Multimedia Player supports the following start options

- Invoke the License Viewer 289
- Start a different database (MMF file) 258
- <u>Invoke the Player with a specified file</u> real or .exe file)
- Use a different license file path

-v-f "path\filename.mmf"-load "path\file.swf" (must be .swf

-If "path\file.lic"

You would start the Multimedia Player and use one or more command line parameters: "c:\programs\myapp\mycourse.exe" -f "c:\programs\myapp\courses\course1.mmf"

Always use " if you specify a path to cover spaces in the path or filename "c:\programs\this is my application\mycourse.exe" -load "l01/lession1.swf"

You can combine options, e.g. specify database/MMF file and load a specific flash **mycourse.exe -f lession.mmf -load "I01\lession1.swf"**

4.13.2 License Viewer

The License Viewer is part of the Multimedia Player and is a **complete administration interface** for the end user. It can be accessed from any screen during the activation and registration process with the link *Show License Information*. The License Viewer can also be invoked by starting the Multimedia Player with the parameter **-v** (see <u>Start Options</u>^[289]) or it can be added in the program manager group using the <u>installer</u>^[263] (parameter *ShowLicenseInfo*).

290 Multimedia Protector

You can also use a standard text file with the extension .BAT (e.g. viewer.bat), which has only one line with the command:

xy-player.exe -v

whereas xy-player.exe is the name of your Multimedia Player of your product. You can download a <u>sample here</u>.

Features

- <u>Basic license information</u> is like manufacturer, company, copy protection status and system information
- License information per module [293] (number of licenses, time limitation, demo version, activation status)
- List of users, PCs and concurrent users for each module. Allows to remove / deactivate 293 a user / PC / item
- Option to apply Activation Keys
- Option to activate log file 295



See also

Basic license informationModule InformationDeactivate a network license293

4.13.2.1 Basic license information

Basic license information is structured in 3 sections.

8	License Viewer	Their devices	1.0.000	investing	1128.088	
	Manufacturer: Mirage Comput Company: Evaluation Company: Evaluation Code 01: 170D9F7C Code 02: CB433287 Code 03: E1266C60 Code 03: E1266C60 Code 06: 726154AC Code 06: 726154AC Code 06: 726154AC Code 07: DE278D8 Code 09: 7706DC28 Code 09: 7706DC28 Code 12: E1266C60 Modules Diff Multimedia Protector - Flas		omputer: 1 (thereof 0 are a	vailable), License is valid u	until: 26.02.2008)	
	Deactivate Activa	tion Key	Refresh	Info		Close

Basic license information - Copy Protection turned off

Manufacturer and License Holder

- Manufacturer. The company name, defined in the screen Settings 5
- Company: Before applying the Serial Number, this is the <u>Default Customer Name</u> (e.g. Evaluation Version). After applying the Serial Number key, the customer name, entered during the activation (<u>Online</u> 129), <u>E-Mail</u> 131), <u>Fax</u> 133), <u>Phone</u> 133) is displayed. This is the license holder

Installation Codes

All available <u>installation codes</u> (hardware IDs) are displayed. If copy protection is not activated, then the folder has this icon . After activation of the copy protection, the icon



switches to \mathbf{Z} and the criteria, which is used for copy protection, is marked with \mathbf{V} .

License Viewer				
Manufacturer: Mi	rage Computer Systems GmbH			
Company: Smart	Inc			
o Installation Code	s - Copy protection activated(4)			
Code 01: 170	D9F7C			
Code 02: CB4	133287			
Code 03: E12	266C60			
🗸 Code 04: E12	266C60			
Code 05: AFE	300341			
Code 06: 726	154AC			
Code 07: DE2	278BD8			
Code 08: 957	D9609			
Code 09: 770	6DC28			
Code 10: 72E	7A7AA			
Code 12: E12	266C60			
🚰 Modules				
🚊 🔣 Multimedia Pr	otector - Flash Demo (Number c	flicenses per Computer: 1 (thereof 0 are a	available), Activation (done))	
🗄 🧖 Activatio				
MIRAGE-				
of System				
Deactivate	Activation Key	Refresh	Info	Close

Basic license information - Copy Protection turned on

If a customer has a problem with copy protection, just use another installation code and create a new Unlock Key [113], which can be applied in the License Viewer.

System information

This information is helpful for support and depends on selected options.

- License File path and name
- License File ID: Each time you save a project the ID is increased
- License File Version: Internal file version
- License File Date: Date and time when the license file was created
- Security level with Multimedia Protector always Advanced Security Level
- Concurrent user option (Heartbeat, Light) with Multimedia Protector always Heartbeat

:	👩 Sys	stem
		License File: C: \Program Files \My Program \bin \flash-demo.lic
		License File - ID : 44
		License File Version: 2600
		License File Date : 12.02.2008 19:21:20
	- I <mark>-</mark>	Advanced Security Level
Λ		

4.13.2.2 Module Information

Each module is listed with additional information (depending on the license type 3).

- Demo version
- Expiry date or time limitation
- Activation Status (required, erroneous, done)
- Number of licenses (module type license per user, PC, concurrent or item counter)
- All keys, which have been used for a module
- All users , Concurrent users , PCs or items per module. If a <u>license is</u> <u>deactivated</u> and this is indicated with the icon

License Viewer	Part Arrister Link and All	di fami di	
Activation Keys Activation Keys Other Activation Keys Other Activation Keys Other Activation Keys Solution Solution	vstems GmbH n activated(4) www.mum and Available www.in activated(4) www.in activated(4) wwww.in activated(4) www.in activated(4) wwwwwwwwwwwwwwwwwwwwww.in activated(4) wwwwwwwwwwwwwwwwwwww	Activ	ration Itus
Activate Activation	Key Refre	sh <u>I</u> nfo	Close

4.13.2.3 Deactive a network license

If an application uses a license per PC $_{297}$ or per User $_{298}$ then a single license can be deactivated within the License Viewer $_{289}$. This is not necessary for concurrent user $_{298}$ because the license is automatically removed when the application terminates.

Deactivate a license within License Viewer

A license (per PC / User / Item) can be deactivated by

- selecting the license
- press button Deactivate

The deactivated license is now displayed in brackets and the icon changes to S. The license can be litem

License Viewer	Barro	
Manufacturer: Mirage Con Company: Smart Inc Installation Codes - Copy Modules Multimedia Protector Activation Keys MIRAGE-02-01 To System	F Select PC / User to deactivate	licenses per Computer: 4 (thereof 3 are available), Activation (done))
<u>D</u> eactivate A	c <u>t</u> ivation Key	Refresh Info

Activate a deactivated license again

A license which was deactivated, is displaced in brackets. It can be activated again by

- selecting the license
- press button Activate

Deactivation of a concurrent user is only necessary, if the user is not automatically removed. It is not a deactivation of the license - it is a removing of the user. The user will get the license again with the next program start again.

The deactivation is done when you press the OK button. If the user has already started the application, the next start of the Multimedia Player will return an error

4.13.2.4 Activate a log file

In case of an unknown error on the end user system, the user can activate a log file and sent it to you. You could then send this file to support.

- Press the Options button
- Select Error tracking enabled
- Select a path for the logfile

Restart the application until the error appears and then send all files with the extension .

log to support@mirage-systems.de . The user can then disable the error tracking.



4.14 Network License - how it works

It is possible to store all files (required files see <u>files for distribution</u> |160) on a network folder. Multiple users can start the Multimedia Player at the same time. Each user needs a **read and write access** to this folder.

The advantages of a network installation are:

- · Centralized installation all files are located on one machine
- Only 1 activation is necessary, even if 100 users or PCs use the Multimedia Player
- If additional users 299 should be added, only one Activation Key has to be sent out

Just define the number of users or computers you want to allow starting the Multimedia Player.

There are 3 different kinds of network license

- Licence per PC 297
- Licence per User 298
- Floating license / concurrent user

See also

Available Licence Options 23

How to add Add additional users / licenses within a network [299]

4.14.1 Licence per PC

The <u>license per PC</u> ²³ uses the **name of the PC** (hostname) and stores this name in the license file. Once the Multimedia Player is started, it checks wether the PC name is already stored in the license file and if not, it starts only in case a free license is available. After the Multimedia Player has been terminated, the license is **still in use**.

A PC can be removed from the license file in the <u>Licence Viewer</u>. The license will then be available for another PC.

This license type can be used for a single PC installation (license = 1 = limitation to 1 PC) or network installation.

O All files have to be on the server in the same directory - see files for distribution and



If a user connects through a remote connection using a tool like Remote Desktop, Citrix, Terminal Server or gotomypc, it depends on the tool if the remote connection counts as a separate license. For most tools, Multimedia Protector retrieves the PC name of the remote PC and counts the connection as a new license.

Multimedia Protector

298

4.14.2 Licence Per User / Person

The <u>license per User</u> uses the **Windows user name** and stores this name in the license file. Once the Multimedia Player is started, it checks whether the user name is already stored in the license file and if not, it starts only in case a free license is available. After the Multimedia Player has been terminated, the license is **still in use**. If a user is logged in with the same name on multiple PCs, it is counted as one license.

This license type can be used for a single user installation (license = 1 = limitation to 1 user) or network installation.

A user can be removed from the license file in the <u>Licence Viewer</u> 139. The license will then be available for another user.

10 All files have to be on the server in the same directory - see files for distribution



4.14.3 Network Licence Per Concurrent User

This <u>concurrent user license</u> is also called floating license. It is checked, how many users have started the Multimedia Player at the same time.

The license per Concurrent User **combines** the **PC name + Windows user name** (e.g. *OFFICEPC-TOM*) and stores this name in the license file. The combination is necessary to count a license, even if a user is logged in with the same name on multiple PCs.

Once the Multimedia Player is started, it checks whether the name is already stored in the license file and if not, it starts only in case a free license is available. After the Multimedia Player has been terminated, the **license is given back by removing the name in the license file.** The license will be available again for another user.

This license type can be used only for a network installation.

O All files have to be on the server in the same directory - see files for distribution and



If a user connects through a remote connection using a tool like Remote Desktop, Citrix, Terminal Server or gotomypc, it depends on the tool if the remote connection counts as a separate license. For most tools, Multimedia Protector retrieves the PC name of the remote PC and counts the connection as a new license.

Oconcurrent user is not supported when the main application is an EXE file 165.

4.14.4 Network Licence per Server

To have a license per Server (the number of PCs are not limited), use the <u>Licence per</u> $\frac{PC}{297}$ option and set the number of PCs to 9999 or any number which will be sufficient.

4.14.5 How to add additional users / licences within a network?

To add additional licenses to an existing installation, just create an Activation Key.

- The license type (per user, per PC or concurrent user) from the original delivery is used See Licence Type
- The Activation Key is generated within the Screen Administration, TAB <u>Additional</u> <u>Licences</u>

If you are using the <u>Web Activation server</u> [324], use the Switch: *Online Validation required* to ensure, that a key can never used twice.

Details for all options see Screen - Administration, TAB Additional Licences

	ppy Prot. Unlocking without Copy Prot. Additional Li	cences	
Hardware ID (Installation Code)	Generate Key	Additional licences	
Online validation required		Number of days to evaluate	
		End of Evaluation	Clear Expiration Date
Key to add 5 licences. Notice: Car Rd6Pr-1EIE8-47K9n-EXxwZ-jNC8N	be applied on all computers!		
-	l-BgFD1		
use extended description	(+8gFD1		Save generated keys to file
-	(+8gFD1		Save generated keys to file

4.15 Problems - Trouble Shooting - Error Messages

If you have problems, check one of the solutions below. Also check <u>How TOs and FAQ</u> 227 - you will find a lot of information for frequently asked questions.

See also <u>Player Error Messages</u> <u>Project Generator Error Messages</u> <u>Activation Server Error Messages</u> <u>FLV files</u> <u>ao1</u> <u>If found no answer for my questions</u> <u>261</u>

300

Multimedia Protector

4.15.1 FLV file does not load

If you load an FLV file within your flash application and this file does not load, try to embed the FLV file instead of loading it externally. Otherwise convert the FLV file to flash. This will always work.

If you have just one SWF file that starts a FLV file, you may use a special command. This will load the FLV file in the player, but will end the SWF file - <u>http://files/xy.flv</u> - the command must begin with http:// and then a folder name or the flv filename must follow.

🔨 If you have multiple FLV files to secure use the Menu Creator 273.

4.15.2 Player Error Messages

Find below error messages which are related to the Multimedia Player.

Online Activation Failed

This error occurs during Online activation of the product. It indicates that your project data is not uploaded on the Web Activation Server.

Check if your URL to the Activation Server is correct - see <u>Online Activation</u> [63]. If the activation never works and you always get this error then this is in 99% due to a wrong URL.

Otherwise it is a typical message when a firewall blocks the online activation. If it is a company wide firewall the system administrator would have to open port 80.

⊟ Error 3011

This error occurs during Online activation of the product. It indicates that your project data is not uploaded on the Web Activation Server.

Solution: Upload your configuration files 94 to the Web Activation Server

Check if your URL to the Activation Server is correct - see Online Activation

■ Error 3013

This error occurs during Online activation of the product. It indicates that your project data is out of date on the Web Activation Server.

Solution: Upload your configuration files 94 to the Web Activation Server

- Log into Web Administration Interface using the Link in the <u>Web Activation Server</u> Administration 103
- Select menu Tools, select: Restart Webservice
- Error 3014

302 Multimedia Protector

This error occurs during Online activation of the product. Probably the user does not have the correct date/time set on his PC. You can react as follows:

- Tell the user to correct the local time setting on his PC
- He can try the Online Activation again

If the same error appears again, the user should try E-Mail activation.

Error - The installation code does not match with code...Copy Protection Violation

If this <u>screen</u> appears during the start of the Multimedia Player it indicates

- The application is used on a different machines as it was licensed for
- The hardware criteria which was used for copy protection has changed (e.g. new hard disk or new network adapter)
- Installation code <u>5</u> 158 or <u>6</u> 158 was used and the Multimedia Player was started on the server AND on the workstation. It only works if the server is used as a dedicated server and the Multimedia Player is not started on the server

4.15.3 Project Generator Error Messages

Find below error messages which are related to the Project Generator.

Error 21

Error message: Creation of.. \Deploy and .. \Config files failed with error 21

Check the folders Config and Deploy

- that you have full write access to these folders
- that no file inside the folder is write protected

4.15.4 Activation Server Error Messages

The Web Activation Server has 2 different types of error messages

Error codes of the Multimedia Player

If an online activation is not successful, the Multimedia Player creates an error code like error 3013 or 3014. All Multimedia Player related errors can be found in the chapter <u>Player Error Messages and</u>. The details of an error can be found in the server log file.

Error codes of the Web Activation Server

Errors which are created on the server side are written into a log file. The details of an error can be found in the server log

2013

This error could have 2 reasons:

- The web service has not all rights which are needed to create / modify files on the folder ...\alg see Necessary Rights for ASP Service
- Your license file expired or more projects are used then included in the license for more details view the log file

3001

Connection to the Web Activation Server could not be established. Typical causes of this error are:

- Web Activation Server is down
- <u>URL to the Web Activation Server</u> is wrong
- Client does not have Internet access or access is blocked by a firewall
- Client Proxy Server settings are wrong
- **3002**

Configuration file licprotectorws.config or a file in the folder \pconfig could not be read

The XML format is wrong. This error can only happen if you manually change configuration files

3003

ProjectID is missing - check licprotectorws.config or the configuration file in the folder \pconfig. This error can only happen if you manually change configuration files

3004

An unknown installation code 103 is used - check licprotectorws.config or the configuration file in the folder \pconfig. This error can only happen if you manually change configuration files

3005

No projects could be found - check licprotectorws.config or the configuration file in the folder \pconfig.Upload your project to the Web Activation Server

3006

Bad request

- ProjectName is empty This error can only happen if you manually change configuration files
- A request to the Web Activation Server was made not using Multimedia Protector
- **3007**

Unknown request type. This situation could only occur, if the Multimedia Protector version is newer than the Web Activation Server server version and Multimedia Protector uses a command, which is unknown to the Web Activation Server

3008

Writing to database failed. Check, if the database is running and check the database setup.

3009

Reading from database failed. Check, if the database is running and check the database setup

3010

The Serial Number was already used or was locked.

Increase the number, how often the key can be used or unlock the key

3011

Unknown project name - the ProjectID used in the file licprotectorws.config or the configuration file in the folder \pconfig **must match** the project name, defined in the project template. Check the activation workflow configuration file, if the file name of the project file is correct. This error can only happen if you manually change configuration files

3012

The output file, which is generated on the folder .\alg during product activation, is missing or has a wrong XML format - for more details view the log file

Reading projects failed with: load config failed

Configuration file licprotectorws.config or a file in the folder \pconfig could not be read

The XML format is wrong. This error can only happen if you manually change configuration files

See also Player Error Messages 301

4.15.5 I found no answer for my questions

If you did not find an answer for your questions in the tutorial search in the extensive Online Knowledge Base.

Browse Online Knowledge Base

4.16 Split project into several databases

Splitting a project into multiple databases (mmf files) is recommended, if the project includes **EXE files** and the database size would be more than 80 to 100 MB.

Unlike flash files, where each file is only loaded when needed, EXE files and all the other files in the database are **loaded during program start.** If the database is too big, the program start takes too much time.

The following steps are necessary to built a project, which is split in sub projects (databases).

Copy / duplicate the main project

First create a main project and define the main <u>start file</u> $[B_3]$ of the application. Then <u>copy</u> the project [125]:





Copy Options - use same encryption

The important option is: **New project uses a different encryption**. **Uncheck** this option. This creates a new database which uses the same encryption like the original database.

A good idea is, to use the main project name in the copy of the database.

Example

- Main project name: english-course
- Copy project 1: english-course-lesson1
- Copy project 2: english-course-lesson2

Copy all databases in a new folder

Each project will create a deploy folder with the Multimedia Player, the license file (.lic) and the database (.mmf) - see chapter the Basics about Distributing a Project 160.

Create a new folder, e.g. ..\complete project. Copy **all files from your main project** and **only the database** (.mmf) file from the sub projects into this folder. The folder content would be as follows:

- autorun.ini
- english-course.exe
- english-course.lic
- english-course.mmf

- english-course-lesson1.mmf
- english-course-lesson2.mmf

Start files from other databases

Starting a file in another database depends on the type of the main application.

Start application in main project is a flash (.swf) file

If the start application in the main project is a flash file (e.g. a $\underline{\text{menu}}_{273}$), the flash file needs to use a special command.

http://FILE:english-course.exe -f english-course-lesson1.mmf\$\$RUN

This commands starts an exe file which is already available on the CD or hard disk. It can be used to start any external application. The file must be on the same folder like the **Multimedia Player**. A pathname cannot be used.

The parameter -f provides the database name to start.

Sample flash code: loadMovie("http://FILE:english-course.exe -f english-course-lesson1.mmf\$\$RUN",2);

4.17 Transfer a license from PC A to PC B

There is a manual procedure, which allows to transfer / move a license from one PC to another PC. To use this feature, you need the *Premium* Edition and the Web Activation Server.

The workflow is as follows:

- Send out an Activation Key to disable the license on PC A
- The usage of the Activation Key is protocolled on the Activation Server. It is the proof, that the customer has used the key
- · Lock the old Serial Number
- Send out a new Serial Number
- Activation Key to disable a license

Create an Activation Key where you set:

- Expiry date to a **date in the past**, e.g. 1.1.2000
- Check Online Validation required

You create this key in the screen Administration, TAB Additional Licenses

👲 Multimedia Protector - flash-dem	o [C:\Program Files\2.0\Demodata\flash	h-demo.mme]
Administratio	on	
Serial Number Unlocking with Copy P	rot. Unlocking without Copy Prot. Addition	nal Licenses Switch on Copy Protection on USB :
Hardware ID (Installation Code) Keiner Online validation required Check Online Validation	Generate Key Se Expiry	
use extended description		Save ge
Settings	Image	Player Options
License Information	Data Import	Save

User applies the Activation Key

To apply the key, the user has to start the <u>License Viewer</u>. Either it is available in the program methe <u>Installation Manager</u>) or you send him a text file with the extension.bat (e.g. viewer.bat), whice command:

xy-player.exe -v

whereas xy-player.exe is the name of your Multimedia Player of your product. You can download a

The user can apply the key using the button Activation Key

License Viewer			
Manufacturer: Mirage Computer System	n activated(4)	er Computer: 1 (thereof 0 are avail	able), Activation (done))
	Enter Activation Key		
	Activation Key	816Pt-9E1E8-47F9T-9XxwZ-oNC	8N-KIFDp
Deactivate Activation R	(ey	Refresh	<u>I</u> nfo O

Check if the Activation Key to disable the license was used

You can check on the Web Activation Server, if the Activation Key was used. This is the proof, that the button Search. If the Activation Key was used, you get a list with more information like date/time

View and Modify

Search Criteria		
Project:	Customer Name:	Entry Key:
All projects	•	t-9EIE8-47F9T-9Xx
Search Field:	Search Criteria:	Search Value:
	✓ like	▼

Lock the old Serial Number

Now enter as Entry Key on the Activation Server the old Serial Number. You get one or more hits, o

View and	моату	loany				
Search Criteria						
Project:	Customer Name:	Entry Key:				
All projects	•	s69Pd-1EIF8-4				
Search Field:	Search Criteria:	Search Valu				
	✓ like	-				
	iests (2)					
¥1699	eMail					
<u>me</u>	<u>eman</u>					
	test@hotmail.com					

This will open a detail record where you can lock the Serial Number.



Send out a new Serial Number

Create a new <u>Serial Number</u> key so that the user can install the product on another machine.

٩

It is possible, that the user can cheat and the manual procedure will be replaced in a future release with an automatic procedure.

4.18 Update your projects

Update content without sending out a new Serial Number

If you want to update your content without sending out a new Serial Number, then just load the new content and save the project. Only send the new created **database** (**MMF**) **file** to the user. If you installed an update of Multimedia Protector, then you also have to deliver the new Multimedia Player.

Sending out a new license file would destroy the product activation information and

the user would have to activate the product again.

Update content with a new Serial Number

If the new content should be usable only with a new Serial Number, then <u>copy the project</u> 125, using the option: **New project uses a different encryption.** This duplicates the complete project but uses a new encryption with new Serial Numbers.

4.19 USB stick as a Dongle replacement

Multimedia Protector offers software copy protection with all the advantages and flexibility of a software solution. However, there are some situations where a hardware protection makes sense.

- Using one single license on multiple PCs and no online connection is available. The user can move the license from PC A to PC B using the USB stick
- Deliver a complete application on a USB stick ready to go without the need to activate the software
- Marketing reasons instead of receiving a CD, the user gets an USB stick with additional value for him

Multimedia Protector offers a unique protection feature using a **standard USB stick**. The license is bound to an individual criterion of the USB stick (different for each stick), which cannot be copied. It supports all the license options of a single user license like

- Evaluation options
- Multiple Modules

and additionally the option to define,

- on how many PCs the USB stick can be used or
- how many users can start the application

This is a very handy feature as you can control the usage of the stick.

The USB stick solution is much better than a Dongle:

- It is favorable the price is only a fraction of the price of an Dongle
- The customer could even use his own USB stick. You can send out a Serial Number and activate the license on the USB stick using Online, E-Mail, Fax and phone activation. This is important if you deliver in multiple countries and shipping hardware is difficult
- In case of a hardware failure you can instantly issue a temporary license, where the license is stored on the local PC

Multimedia Protector combines the advantages of software copy protection with the advantages of hardware protection!

1 The USB stick protection can only be used as a single PC / single user license. A

network license is not supported as a PC cannot retrieve the hardware information of the USB stick when it is used on a server.

10 The USB protection works only with Windows XP and Windows Vista.

 \bigcirc This feature is available only in the Multimedia Protector Premium \bigcirc version.

See also

Activate USB stick 121 Deliver the USB stick with Copy Protection already activated 313 Use USB stick of the customer 314 Install Application on hard disk and use USB stick 316

4.19.1 Deliver the USB stick with Copy Protection already activated

To deliver a USB stick with a ready to go license, there are only a few steps necessary.

Limit usage

The customer can use the license always **only on the computer, where the USB stick is attached**. The limitation by PC / user is an additional configuration setting to limit the usage.

- Use a license per <u>Computer/PC</u> this limits the usage to the defined number of computers (recommended option). To define an unlimited usage, just configure a license with 9999 computers
- Use a license per <u>User</u> + this limits the usage to the defined number of users (USB stick can be used only on one PC)

(1) A license per concurrent user is not supported with an USB stick.

Activate protection on USB stick

Select screen Administration, <u>Switch on Copy Protection on USB Stick</u> 121. This opens a dialog, where you can select the license file on the USB stick. The copy protection is then activated.

If the USB stick does not support this option, an error message is displayed: *There is no valid instcode for file filename.lic* You have to use another USB stick.

Typical project settings

In combination with USB stick you would have typically these settings:

• Uncheck - <u>No evaluation version - Serial Number</u> 72 needed to start

314 Multimedia Protector

• Check - No evaluation - content protection only 75

Automated process for large quantities

If you need large quantities of USB sticks with a license file already activated, you can use the service of the company OEM marketing - <u>www.oem.de.</u> They are specialized in CD and USB duplication and they have a special license from us to add the USB stick protection in a batch process. You have to send them your files from the folder Deploy.

4.19.2 Use USB stick of the customer

If an USB stick of the customer should be used, there is the same <u>workflow</u> with product activation. All activation options (online, e-mail, fax, phone) are supported. The user has to copy the original files to his own USB stick.

The USB stick protection uses the <u>installation code 11</u> [159]. For activation by e-mail, fax, phone nothing specific has to be considered. See chapter: <u>Unlock Key</u> [113]. If the installation code 11 is empty, then the USB stick does not support copy protection.

315

±001.	anendologe	- 10		0	ontexe		-)(Numeri		
	A <u>n</u>	register@mirage-	systems	.de						
<u>S</u> enden	<u> </u>									
Konto -	Betreff:	Activation-Requ	est for C	III Data	Connector.					
	-	·								
Activati	on-Reque	st for CTI Data	Conne	ector (27.10.200	7 18:24:52)				
		ange the follow	ing inf	forma	tion					
		Tom Hanks	. 410 24			41				
		NDEi-5CP93-9E :om.hanks@sm			QD5K-6K1	4L				
Instcode		.om.nanks@sm	arunc	.com						
01: 170										
02: CB4	33287									
03: E12	66C60									
04: E12										
05: 1A7										
06: 73F				_						
07: DL2 08: 98B		Installation co 11 is empty								
09: 770		No support o	f							
10: FAC	1BEBC	Copy Protecti	on							
11:	ALC: NO									
12: E12	66C60									
You will	l get an U	nlock Key back	withir	1 2-3 b	ousiness da	vs.				
	-	sygo - QHD001				/				
User Inf	fo:									
(here yo	ou can wri	ite comments t	the the	Activa	tion Cente	er)				
The foll	owing blo	ck contains the	infor	matio	n of this er	nail in an a	utomatio	ally proce	ssable	for
	delayed.									
CTAR										
	TBLOCK -	 PWmMe1R2gZ	c1490	SfL 11+d	ll Itm1NI3c	1220101205	ktσ1fΔ\/I	6121		
		X1qRIBD0RLb1					-		2	
-		, a1gGjau1OCb								
	-	N1gJRd51DxQ								
		9629dZqh1gDf								
	_	W5E28b7mb1			c1Z5qLg1N	MIoQi1SbN3	341k2r79	JOSNLj		
	BLOCK	N1hQ2IN1UsCK	C1/X1	.611						
		E-Mail Activa	tion -	No su	pport of U	SB stick pro	otection			

For online activation you have to make an own project (different <u>Name of Multimedia</u> <u>Player</u> (59)) because the activation server has to use installation code 11 as the main criteria. If the USB stick does not support copy protection, then the license is

316 Multimedia Protector

automatically bound to the PC which makes the activation.

Specify **Code 11** as the <u>Primary Hardware ID</u> and code 4 as the Alternative Hardware ID.

4.19.3 Install Application on hard disk using USB stick

It is possible to install the product and/or database on the hard disk. Only the license file has to be on the USB stick.

Only Database on the hard disk

If the database (mmf file) should be on the harddisk, then copy the Multimedia Player and the license file (.lic file) to the USB drive.

The Multimedia Player has to be started with an parameter

xy.exe -f "path\filename.mmf"

Multimedia Player and Database on the hard disk

If the Multimedia Player and the database (mmf file) is on the harddisk, then only copy the license file (.lic file) to the USB drive.

The Multimedia Player has to be started with an parameter

XY.exe -If "path\licensefile.lic"

4.20 Workflow - from Distribution to Activation

This chapter explains the workflow in detail from distribution to activation.

- Distribution
- Evaluation Version
- Activation
- Sending out keys

4.20.1 The Basics about Workflow

Depending on the kind of activation you choose, the workflow will be different.

The predefined workflow is as follows:

- Create the project and define the settings
- Create the files for distribution <u>Deploy</u>
- Provide an <u>evaluation version</u> 24 (also non-evaluation version is possible)
- Customer can test within the time limited period or buy the software (buy link available if defined 59)
- Customer buys the software and gets the <u>Serial Number</u> [10] Key. The key is unique and is the 'proof of purchase'.
- The Serial Number sets a trigger that enables activation via <u>web</u> $\boxed{63}$ (online), <u>e-mail</u> $\boxed{62}$, <u>fax</u> $\boxed{66}$ or <u>phone</u> $\boxed{63}$ (activation methods can be defined)
- Online Activation the Serial Number is transferred to the <u>Web Activation Server</u> (324); this process validates whether the Serial Number was already used and enables <u>copy</u> <u>protection</u> (22), deletes the time limitation (to get an unlimited full version). The customer can work instantly with the application. A reinstallation on the same PC that is already registered is accepted
- Activation by E-Mail, fax and phone requires manual activation by sending the installation code (153) (hardware ID) to you and sending back an Unlock Key (116)
- The application is now copy protected and without time limitation (depending on the settings)



4.20.2 Create Files for Distribution - Deploy

Create the files for Distribution and Deploy it - Details see chapter Deploy the Project 160

4.20.3 Evaluation Version

The application can be tested in an evaluation mode - details see chapter Evaluation



4.20.4 Buy Serial Number

As a proof of purchase, the customer gets a unique Serial Number. This Serial Number is generated within the <u>Administration 110</u> screen.

After receiving the Serial Number, the customer selects an <u>activation method</u> (Online, E-Mail, Fax, Phone) and types in the Serial Number, name and E-Mail.



Start of application – select Activation Method (Online, E-Mail, Fax, Phone) requires to type in user name and E-Mail

If an <u>Online Shop</u> with sused, the Serial Number Key can be generated automatically after the order process.

Generate Serial Number

Additional days after applying Serial Number Additional days after applying Serial Number Mumber of Users 2 2	Keys Misc
Serial Number Unlocking with Copy Prot. Unlocking without Copy Prot. Additional Licences Additional days after applying Serial Number Number of desired Serial Numbers 3 Image: Comparison of Users Serial Number of Users	
Additional days after applying Serial Number 3 Generate Key Number of Users 3	
3 Generate Key 3 Image: Constraint of Users	Misc
Number of Users	8
Q9PM-1EIH8-47397-EX9wZ-INT8N-BuFDE	Ī .
g9PT-1E1H8-4739e-EX9wZ-XNT8N-BvFDo 39Pr-1E1H8-4739e-EX9wZ-1NT8N-8XFD3	
le la	F
use extended description Save generated keys to file	
Settings Image Player Options Administration	

4.20.5 Online Activation

This method allows a complete **automation** of the process. The <u>Web Activation server</u> $\boxed{324}$ is required. Mirage offers a <u>hosting</u> $\boxed{326}$ of the server. The Web Activation Server also ensures that the **Serial Number can be used only once** (configurable).

The <u>hardware IDs</u> and the Serial Number is sent to the Web Activation server, verified, stored in a data base; in case the Serial Number was not used before, <u>copy</u> <u>protection</u> will be activated and time limitation will be deleted to allow a an unlimited program start.



Sample Screen - Enter Serial Number - Online Activation

322 Multimedia Protector



4.20.6 Activation by E-Mail, Phone, Fax

With either of this method, the customer has to send to you the <u>installation code</u> (154) (8 digit hardware ID), Serial Number, name, E-Mail address, and you have to send back the Unlock Key (Copy Protection Key). The Unlock Key is generated within the <u>Administration</u> (116) screen. If selected during the creation of the project, time <u>limitation will</u> <u>be removed</u> (73).

Start of application, type in Serial Number, Name and E-Mail



<u>Note</u>

You have to check manually wether the Serial Number was already used or not. If the Web Activation server is installed but the customer sends the information via E-Mail, Phone or Fax, starting with version 2.5 of the web Activation Server the Unlock Key can be generated within the Web Activation interface, which ensures that the key cannot be used twice.

Sample Screen - Enter Serial Number - Request Unlock Key by E-Mail

Y Activation of Multimedia Edition	- Flash Demo	$\mathbf{\overline{X}}$
Licence Software (op) Protection and Liver (corr. b) The software (op) Protection and Liver (corr. b)	Request Unlock Key by E-Mail Enter Serial Number 678U0-31CC9-9AF7m-AZ87n-Dd18N-0Q1FH You can not find your Serial Number?	
Serial Number If you don't have a valid Serial Number you can buy the software.	Enter Name/Company Tom Hanks	
Buy it Please enter all information that is requested in order to start the activation process.	Enter your E-Mail Address Tom.Hanks@smartinc.com Your entered registration information will be sent to the Activation Center. You will receive an E-Mail containing information to unlock this software.	
	Request Unlock Key by E-Mail - send E-Mail You can also activate the software online You can also request an unlock key by Fax You can also request an unlock key by Phone	
Show Licence Information	Back Next	

4.21 Web Activation Server

4.21.1 About Online Activation

The Web Activation and Registration module is an *out of the box* solution for activating a license and changing license information online. The Multimedia Playerconnects to the registration server and performs the following operations:

- Activate copy protection
- Change a license, e.g. from demo mode to full version mode
- Verify Serial Numbers and Activation Keys

The registration server ensures that each license can be registered only once. Every transaction is logged to a database.

Optionally, keys can be transmitted to the activation server before they are applied to the license file. It is checked, whether the key was already used or not. This is to ensure that the key cannot be passed on and used multiple times.

See workflow 321 for default options of activation.

This feature is available only in Multimedia Protector <u>*Premium*</u> be version. The Web Activation Server is provided via a <u>hosting</u> model. Mirage provides installation and
maintenance of the server. The hosting has to be ordered separately. You can run your own server. Contact <u>sales@mirage-systems.de.</u>

See also

Enable Online Activation 63 Online Activation Workflow 321 Web Administration Interface 326 Hosting of the Web Activation Server 326 Sample project to test online activation 57

4.21.2 Online Activation - Step by Step

To use the Online Activate feature, perform the following steps:

One time configuration

- You need the Multimedia Protector Premium version check your license [237]
- You need a valid hosting account Order Hosting.
- Type in you hosting data in the screen Administration, <u>Web Activation Server</u> Administration

Configuration per project

- Select Online Activation in the screen <u>Settings</u> and also set correct URL to Web Activation Server
- Save your project Screen Save
- <u>Upload configuration files</u> 94 to Activation Server
- Log into Web Administration Interface using the Link in the <u>Web Activation Server</u> Administration
- Select menu Tools, select: Restart Webservice

Now you can start using a Serial Number and activate the product online.

Retrieve Statistics

- Log into Web Administration Interface using the Link in the <u>Web Activation Server</u> Administration 103
- Browse the <u>tutorial</u> of the Web Activation Server

326

4.21.3 Web Administration Interface

The Web Activation Server comes with an browser-based Web Administration interface. You can monitor each activation, allow reactivation or detect fraudulent usage of Activation Keys.

The Web Administration interface can be accessed within the Administration 103 screen.

Have a look at the administration interface on the <u>demo Web Activation Server</u> or browse the <u>tutorial</u> of the Web Activation Server.

4.21.4 Hosting of the Web Activation Server

Mirage provides the Web Activation Server as a hosting service, which allows you to start without worrying about running an own server, applying updates or any firewall issues.

You pay per number of activations. For details including used hardware and pricing, see <u>hosting service</u> on our website.

4.21.5 Activation Server for Testing

We provide a Test Activation Server, which allows you to make real activations with your product before you order the hosting service.

Use the following configuration settings.

- In the <u>Screen Settings</u> (a), set the URL to Web Activation Server to *http:// registerserver.net/9999999/lpweb/lpws.asmx*
- In the <u>Screen Administration</u> 103, Set Hosting Number to **9999999** and Password to **Ip9999999**
- In the <u>Screen Administration</u> 103. press the button *Change URL* and type in the URL to the Webserver,

https://www.registerserver.net/9999999/lpweb

Multimedia Protector - flash-de	mo [C:\Prog	ram Files\2.0\demodata\fla	sh-de	mo.mme]			(
Administrati	ion						
About Multimedia Protector	Ch	eck for Updates					
Repair and Compress Proj	ject file)					
							_
Web Activation Server Administra	ation			Chang	ie URL		
				🔲 I use an own Activatio	on Server		
Hosting Number 1	381806			FTP-Server address			
Hosting Password *	********			FTP Account			
				FTP Password	****		
				Path on FTP-Server			
Primary Hardware ID (Installation	Code)	Netbios Name(local)(4)	-				
Alternative Hardware ID (Installa	tion Code)	MAC Address(2)	•				
Display Quick Introduction hel	p						-
Error Tracking Enabled							
Select path for Log-files							
							_
Show License Information							
Settings		Image		Player Options		Administration	1
License Information		Data Import	(Save			

Configure Activation Server

- Save the project 89
- Upload configuration files [94] to Activation Server
- Log into Web Administration Interface using the Link in the <u>Web Activation Server</u> Administration 103
- Select menu Tools, select: Restart Webservice

Now you can start using a Serial Number and activate the product online.

Retrieve Statistics

- Log into Web Administration Interface using the Link in the <u>Web Activation Server</u> Administration 103
- Browse the tutorial of the Web Activation Server

As this is a testing environment the projects are removed from time to time and the activations are deleted.

328

4.22 Your Multimedia Protector License

Multimedia Protector comes with an own license file - **mp.lic**. The license is a license **PER PC / COMPUTER**. Copy Protection is turned on after activation. We recommend making a backup of the license file.

- You have to activate the product before you can use it without the restrictions of the demo version 56 see How to activate Multimedia Protector 228
- Find out more about your license in the chapter Display your Licence 237
- See <u>Licence Agreement</u> 333 for details of usage.

See also

Demo version 56 Browse your License 237 Apply Activation Key 234 License Agreement 333

4.22.1 Demoversion

The demo version has the following restrictions:

- Limited by days normally 15 days
- During the program start of the Multimedia Player a message is displayed: This is an unregistered Version of Multimedia Protector

All other parts of the application are fully functional.

Demo versions are available for the *Standard* and Premium version on the website <u>www.</u> <u>Multimedia-Protector.com</u>. See: <u>Standard or Premium Version</u> (56)? for differences.

The Online Activation can be tested with the project *flash-demo.mme* (only with Premium version).

4.22.2 Browse your License

You can access your license information and your Serial Number within the <u>administration</u> screen.

Multimedia Protector or Multimedia Protector Premium

For differences see chapter Standard or Premium Version? [56]

- Number of Computers which have a license normally 1
- <u>Demo version</u> 56 if omitted, it is a full version
- Valid until (time limitation) if omitted, it is a non time limited version
- <u>Web Activation</u> [228]- either done or required

Your Serial Number

To retrieve your Serial Number:

- click on the + sign in the first line with the label Multimedia Protector
- click on the + sign with the label Activation Keys

The visible number is your Serial Number.

Update Subscription

The update subscription entitles you to install the latest updates as long as it has not expired. See chapter Check for Updates 10^{1} how to download updates.

- Available / Not available
- Time limitation the date when the update subscription expires

Release Number

• Internal release information

Manufac	turer: Mirage Computer Systems GmbH	no de Ther, candidana		_
	y: Test Version 2.0 Premium			
🕂 👩 Installati	ion Codes - Copy protection activated(4)		
- Modules				
		censes per Computer: 1 (thereof 0 are a	vailable), Activation (done))	
	Activation Keys	** N-9m7Ik		

4.22.3 Apply Activation Key

330

Multimedia Protector

An Activation Key is used to modify the license information (e.g. increase number of licenses). All Activation Keys are unique and have the same format like.

dO8uc-G1iC9-jOGeA-BqgEX-U71ID-0V1VX

There are 6 blocks each with 5 characters. The blocks are separated by a hyphen for better readability.

Where do I apply the Activation Key

If you got an Activation Key via E-Mail or Fax, you can enter the key within the screen *Administration, TAB Misc, <u>Show License Information</u>*

🧕 Multimedia Protector - flas	h-demo [C:\Prog	ram Files\2.0\demodata\f	lash-der	no.mme]	
Administra	ation				
About Multimedia Protector	Ch	eck for Updates			
Repair and Compres	s Project file)			
Web Activation Server Admi	nistration			Chang	e URL
				🔲 I use an own Activatio	on Server
Hosting Number	1381806			FTP-Server address	
Hosting Password	********			FTP Account	
				FTP Password	****
				Path on FTP-Server	
Primary Hardware ID (Instal	ation Code)	Netbios Name(local)(4)	-		
Alternative Hardware ID (Installation Code) MAC Address(2)					
Display Quick Introductio	n help				
Error Tracking Enabled					
Select path for Log-files					
Show License Information					
Settings		Image		Player Options	
License Information		Data Import	\square	Save	

Screen - Administration, TAB Misc

Online Validation

O Some Activation Keys are validated online and they require an Internet connection. After pressing the OK button this screen appears.



Web Activation				
\square	The Activation Key has to be activa	ated online.		
335 335	Please provide a connection to the internet and activate it.			
\square		Proxy settings		
	Activate now	<u>C</u> ancel		

Apply Activation Key after Evaluation Period has expired

If the evaluation period has expired, select **Show Licence Information** (see screen *below*) and then press the button Activation Key.

nterion of Multimedia Protector Pr	remium 2.0
	Sorry, it is not possible to continue At start of Multimedia Protector Premium 2.0 the following problem has occurred The license of module Multimedia Protector Premium has expired
Troubles?!	
Please make sure that the product is installed correctly. Make sure that the product is registered. If you cannot solve this problem, please contact our support.	Show license information Select this option to apply an Activation Key
0	End

4.22.4 Licence Agreement

PERPETUAL END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT

- You may distribute and install only those files marked for distribution in the chapter <u>Deploy</u> [160] on any machines of your end users
- You can distribute the Multimedia Player to any customer you like without paying more fees
- The license entitles to install Multimedia Protector on one single PC (license per PC/ seat)

NOTICE TO ALL USERS: CAREFULLY READ THE FOLLOWING LEGAL AGREEMENT ('AGREEMENT'), FOR THE LICENCE OFSPECIFIED SOFTWARE ('SOFTWARE') BY MIRAGE COMPUTER SYSTEMS GMBH ('MIRAGE'). BY CLICKING THE ACCEPT BUTTON OR INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE, YOU (EITHER AN INDIVIDUAL OR A SINGLE ENTITY) CONSENT TO BE BOUND BYAND BECOME A PARTY TO THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO ALL OF THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, CLICK THE BUTTON THAT INDICATES THAT YOU DO NOT ACCEPT THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT AND DO NOT INSTALL THE SOFTWARE.(IF APPLICABLE, YOU MAY RETURN THE PRODUCT TO THE PLACE OF PURCHASE FOR A FULL REFUND.)

1. LICENCE Grant. Subject to the payment of the applicable LICENCE fees, and subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, MIRAGE hereby grants to you a non-exclusive, non-transferable right to use one copy of the specified version of the Software and the accompanying documentation (the 'Documentation'). You may install one copy of the Software on one computer, workstation, personal digital assistant, pager, 'smart phone' or other electronic device for which the Software was designed (each, a 'Client Device'). If the Software is LICENCED as a suite or bundle with more than one specified Software product, this LICENCE applies to all such specified Software products, subject to any restrictions or usage terms specified on the applicable price list or product packaging that apply to any of such Software products individually.

a. Use. The Software is LICENCED as a single product; it may not be used on more than one Client Device or by more than one user at a time, except as set forth in this Section 1. The Software is 'in use' on a Client Device when it is loaded into the temporary memory (i.e., random-access memory or RAM) or installed into the permanent memory (e.g., hard disk, CD-ROM, or other storage device) of that Client Device. This LICENCE authorizes you to make one copy of the Software solely for backup or archival purposes, provided that the copy you make contains all of the Software's proprietary notices.

b. Server-Mode. You may use the Software on a Client Device as a server ('Server') within a multi-user or networked environment('Server-Mode') only if such use is permitted in the applicable price list or product packaging for the Software. A separate LICENCE is required for each Client Device or 'seat' that may connect to the Server at any time, regardless of whether such LICENCED Client Devices or seats are concurrently connected to, accessing or using the Software. Use of software or hardware that reduces the number of Client Devices or seats directly accessing or utilizing the Software (e.g., 'multiplexing' or 'pooling' software or hardware) does not reduce the number of LICENCES required (i.e., the required number of LICENCES would equal the number of distinct inputs to the multiplexing or pooling software or hardware 'front end'). If the

number of Client Devices or seats that can connect to the Software can exceed the number of LICENCES you have obtained, then you must have a reasonable mechanism in place to ensure that your use of the Software does not exceed the use limits specified for the LICENCES you have obtained. This LICENCE authorizes you to make or download one copy of the Documentation for each Client Device or seat that is LICENCED, provided that each such copy contains all of the Documentation's proprietary notices.

c. Volume LICENCES. If the Software is LICENCED with volume LICENCE terms specified in the applicable price list or product packaging for the Software, you may make, use and install as many additional copies of the Software on the number of Client Devices as the volume LICENCE authorizes. You must have a reasonable mechanism in place to ensure that the number of Client Devices on which the Software has been installed does not exceed the number of LICENCES you have obtained. This LICENCE authorizes you to make or download one copy of the Documentation for each additional copy authorized by the volume LICENCE, provided that each such copy contains all of the Documentation's proprietary notices.

2. Term. This Agreement is effective for an unlimited duration unless and until earlier terminated as set forth herein. This Agreement will terminate automatically if you fail to comply with any of the limitations or other requirements described herein. Upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement, you must destroy all copies of the Software and the Documentation.

3. Updates. For the time period specified in the applicable price list or product packaging for the Software, you are entitled to download revisions or updates to the Software when and as MIRAGE publishes them via its electronic bulletin board system, website or through other online services. For a period of thirty (30) days from the date of the of original purchase of the Software, you are entitled to download one(1) revision or upgrade to the Software when and as MIRAGE publishes it via its electronic bulletin board system, website or through other online services. After the specified time period, you have no further rights to receive any revisions or upgrades without purchase of a new LICENCE to the Software.

4. Ownership Rights. The Software is protected by German copyright laws and international treaty provisions. MIRAGE and its suppliers own and retain all right, title and interest in and to the Software, including all copyrights, patents, trade secret rights, trademarks and other intellectual property rights therein. Your possession, installation, or use of the Software does not transfer to you any title to the intellectual property in the Software, and you will not acquire any rights to the Software except as expressly set forth in this Agreement. All copies of the Software and Documentation made hereunder must contain the same proprietary notices that appear on and in the Software and Documentation.

5. Restrictions. You may not sell, lease, LICENCE, rent, loan or otherwise transfer, with or without consideration, rent, lease, loan or resell the Software. MIRAGE updates its Software frequently and performance data for its Software change. Before conducting benchmark tests regarding this Software, contact MIRAGE to verify that you possess the correct Software for the test and the then current version and edition of the Software. Benchmark tests of former, outdated or inappropriate versions or editions of the Software may yield results that are not reflective of the performance of the current version or edition of the Software. You agree not to permit any third party (other than third parties

under contract with you which contains nondisclosure obligations no less restrictive than those set forth herein) to use the LICENCED Program in any form and shall use all reasonable efforts to ensure that no improper or unauthorized use of the LICENCED Program is made. You may not permit third parties to benefit from the use or functionality of the Software via a timesharing, service bureau or other arrangement, except to the extent such use is specified in the applicable price list, purchase order, or product packaging for the Software. You may not transfer any of the rights granted to you under this Agreement. You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble the Software, except to the extent the foregoing restriction is expressly prohibited by applicable law. You may not modify, or create derivative works based upon, the Software in whole or in part. You may not copy the Software or Documentation except as expressly permitted in Section 1 above. You may not remove any proprietary notices or labels on the Software. All rights not expressly set forth hereunder are reserved by MIRAGE.

6. Warranty and Disclaimer.

a. Limited Warranty. MIRAGE warrants that for sixty (60) days from the date of original purchase the media (e.g., diskettes) on which the Software is contained will be free from defects in materials and workmanship.

b. Customer Remedies. MIRAGE' and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy for any breach of the foregoing warranty shall be, at MIRAGE's option, either (i) return of the purchase price paid for the LICENCE, if any, or (ii) replacement of the defective media in which the Software is contained. You must return the defective media to MIRAGE at your expense with a copy of your receipt. This limited warranty is void if the defect has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement media will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period. Outside the United States, this remedy is not available to the extent MIRAGE is subject to restrictions under United States export control laws and regulations.

c. Warranty Disclaimer. Except for the limited warranty set forth herein, THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED 'AS IS.' TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, MIRAGE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND NONINFRINGEMENT WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE AND THE ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTATION. YOU ASSUME RESPONSIBILITY FOR SELECTING THE SOFTWARE TO ACHIEVE YOUR INTENDED RESULTS, AND FOR THE INSTALLATION OF, USE OF, AND RESULTS OBTAINED FROM THE SOFTWARE. WITHOUT LIMITING THE FOREGOING PROVISIONS, MIRAGE MAKES NO WARRANTY THAT THE SOFTWARE WILL BE ERROR-FREE OR FREE FROM INTERRUPTIONS OR OTHER FAILURES OR THAT THE SOFTWARE WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS.

7. Limitation of Liability. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES AND UNDER NO LEGAL THEORY, WHETHER IN TORT, CONTRACT, OR OTHERWISE, SHALL MIRAGE OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY OTHER PERSON FOR ANY INDIRECT, CONSE-QUENTIAL OR PURELY FINANCIAL DAMAGES OF ANY CHARACTER INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, WORK STOPPAGE, COMPUTER FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, OR FOR ANY AND ALL OTHER DAMAGES OR LOSSES. IN NO EVENT WILL MIRAGE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES IN EXCESS OF THE LIST PRICE MIRAGE CHARGES FOR A LICENCE TO THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF MIRAGE SHALL HAVE BEEN

ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. THIS LIMITATION OF LIABILITY SHALL NOT APPLY TO LIABILITY FOR DEATH OR PERSONAL INJURY TO THE EXTENT THAT APPLICABLE LAW PROHIBITS SUCH LIMITATION.

8. United States Government. The Software and accompanying Documentation are deemed to be 'commercial computer software' and' commercial computer software documentation,' respectively, pursuant to DFAR Section 227.7202 and FAR Section 12.212, as applicable. Any use, modification, reproduction, release, performance, display or disclosure of the Software and accompanying Documentation by the United States Government shall be governed solely by the terms of this Agreement and shall be prohibited except to the extent expressly permitted by the terms of this Agreement.

9. Export Controls. You have been advised that the Software and Documentation (the 'Products') are subject to the U.S. Export Administration Regulations. You shall not export, import or transfer Products contrary to U.S. or other applicable laws, whether directly or indirectly, and will not cause, approve or otherwise facilitate others such as agents or any third parties in doing so. You represent and agree that neither the United States Bureau of Export Administration nor any other federal agency has suspended, revoked or denied your export privileges. You agree not to use or transfer the Products for end use relating to any nuclear, chemical or biological weapons, or missile technology unless authorized by the U.S. Government by regulation or specific LICENCE. Additionally, you acknowledge that the Products are subject to export control regulations in the European Union and You hereby declare and agree that the Products will not be used for any other purpose than civil (non-military) purposes. The parties agree to cooperate with each other with respect to any application for any required LICENCES and approvals, however, You acknowledge it is Your ultimate responsibility to comply with any and all export and import laws and that MIRAGE has no further responsibility after the initial sale to You within the original country of sale.

10.High Risk Activities. The Software is not fault-tolerant and is not designed or intended for use in hazardous environments requiring fail-safe performance, including without limitation, in the operation of nuclear facilities, aircraft navigation or communication systems, air traffic control, weapons systems, direct life-support machines, or any other application in which the failure of the Software could lead directly to death, personal injury, or severe physical or property damage (collectively, 'High Risk Activities'). MIRAGE expressly disclaims any express or implied warranty of fitness for High Risk Activities.

11.Miscellaneous. This Agreement is governed by the laws of Germany, without reference to conflict of laws principles. The application of the United Nations Convention of Contracts for the International Sale of Goods is expressly excluded. This Agreement sets forth all rights for the user of the Software and is the entire agreement between the parties. MIRAGE reserves the right to periodically audit you to ensure that you are not using any Software in violation of this Agreement. During your standard business hours and upon prior written notice, MIRAGE may visit you and you will make available to MIRAGE or its representatives any records pertaining to the Software to MIRAGE. The cost of any requested audit will be solely borne by MIRAGE, unless such audit discloses an underpayment or amount due to MIRAGE in excess of five percent (5%) of the initial LICENCE fee for the Software or you are using the Software in an unauthorized manner, in which case you shall pay the cost of the audit. This Agreement supersedes any other communications with respect to the Software and Documentation. This Agreement may not be modified except by a written addendum issued by a duly authorized representative

of MIRAGE. No provision hereof shall be deemed waived unless such waiver shall be in writing and signed by MIRAGE or a duly authorized representative of MIRAGE. If any provision of this Agreement is held invalid, the remainder of this Agreement shall continue in full force and effect. The parties confirm that it is their wish that this Agreement has been written in the English language only.

12.MIRAGE CUSTOMER CONTACT. If you have any questions concerning these terms and conditions, or if you would like to contact MIRAGE for any other reason, please call +49 700/54885342, or write: : MIRAGE Computer Systems GmbH, Auf der Steige 12, 88326 Aulendorf – E-Mail: Info@Mirage-Systems.de). You will find our internet web- site at www.mirage-systems.de.

Date: 01.08.2003 LA-DE-01082003

Index

- - -

.net 174, 259

- A -

About Licence Protector Multimedia Edition 20 access basic 174, 259 Activate Product 228 Activation by E-Mail 231 E-Mail 60, 62, 131, 322 Fax 60, 66, 132, 322 Online 230 Online / Web 60, 63, 321, 324 Phone 60, 68, 133, 322 Activation Key 119 234, 330 Apply **Activation Server** Error 302 Error Uploading Files 95 Upload Files 94 Add additional users within a network 299 Additional Licence 119 Add-ONs 140 98 Administration Adobe Captivate 26 Lightroom 43 Airtight 150 Album 1 147 148 Album 2 Allow Print 85 Application Reinstallation 233 Apply Activation Key 234, 330 Articulate 27 Audio 141, 177, 248 Authorware 26, 259 Automatic Licence Generator Licence 108 Autorun 160. 257 AVI 20, 179, 243

- B -

Backup Licence File 234, 328 Project Folder 124 basics 20 Buv Serial Number 319 Buy Link 59 Buy Product 230 **Buy Serial Number** 230

- C -

C# 174, 259 174, 259 C++ Camtasia 32 Cancel without saving 92 Captivate 26 CD Autorun 160 CD/DVD 163 CD Distribution 89 274, 280 CD Menu CDMenuPro 284 Check for Updates 101 CHM 20 CHM file 181, 244 cleverbridge 201 **Company Name** 59 Compress database 102 Compress project file 102 Concurrent User License Viewer 291 **Concurrent User Licence** 108 Configuration Music Player 142 Configure Activation Server 103 Content Protection 25, 75, 242 Control Bar 85 **Conversion Options** 87 Convert AVI 179, 243 Document with Hyperlink 194, 256

339

Convert Excel 194, 255 182, 247 HTML HTML Files 42 MPEG 179, 243 PDF 183, 249 PDF with Hyperlink 250 Powerpoint 186, 251 Powerpoint with Hyperlink 190, 253 PPT 186, 251 PPT with Hyperlink 190, 253 Quicktime 179, 243 Visio 194, 255 WAV 193, 254 Windows Media Video 179, 243 Word 194, 255 Word with Hyperlink 194, 256 Convert Hyperlinks 87 Convert Video 39 **Converting Options** 87 Copy Project 125 Copy Protection 22 Basics 153 Change 117 hardware ID 154 Hostname 157 installation code 154 MAC Address + UNC Pathname 158 Mac Adress 155 No 75 No Copy Protection 242 **USB Stick** 159 Volume ID 155 Volume ID + UNC Pathname 158 Without 75, 117 Copy Protection Error 301 Copy Protection Violation 138 Create Files for Distribution 319 Keylist 110 New Project 116 Project 122 Serial Number 110 116 Unlock Key Create CD 89 Create CD / Download with an installer 97.164. 261

Create Unlock Key With Copy Portection 116 With Web Activation Server 118 Without Copy Portection 117 Create ZIP file 91 Customer Name 59

- D -

Data File 80 Data Import 80 Deactivate 293 concurrent user item counter 293 network license 293 **Deactivate Licence** 138 deinstall 261 delphi 174, 259 Demoversion 56, 108, 328 Deploy 89, 91, 160 CD / DVD 163 Download Link 163, 206, 212, 219, 225 **Deploy Folder** View 94 Director 37 **Disable Printing** 186, 193, 195 Distribute 163 Dongle 312

- E -

Element5 215 E-Mail Activation 231 Enable error tracking 107 Error 302 21 3011 301 3013 301 3014 301 **Activation Server** 302 Generator Errors 302 Instalallation Code does not match 138 Player Error 301 There is no free licence available 138 107 Error log Error Uploading Files to Activation Server 95 Evaluation 319

Evaluation 319 Options 24 Prolong 239 Time 71 **Evaluation Expired** 136 **Evaluation Version** No evaluation version 136 194, 255, 257 Excel EXE Standalone EXE file 166 EXE file Configuration File 173 Password 168, 169 EXE file protection 20, 165, 246 Expired 136

- F -

File Start File 80 File Name 123 File Types 20 Flash 20, 176, 254 Flash Development 195 Flash invoking EXE file 167, 196 Read XML file 196 Store Data 197 Flash Version 258 Flash Video MX 39 Flashform **Rapid Intake** 37 Flashpaper 39, 194, 255 **Floating Licence** 298 FLV 20, 176, 247 Load Problem 301 FLV file 281 Folder 124 Format of a Key 109 Foto 147 fscommand 167, 196 Full Screen 85 **Full Version** Time limited 73 Full version witth expiry date 240

- H -

Harddisk Installation 97, 164, 261 Hardware ID 154, 316, 322 Hostname 157 MAC Address 155 MAC Address + UNC Pathname 158 Transfer 155 USB Stick 159 Volume ID 155 Volume ID + UNC Pathname 158 Home Button 85 Hosting Web Activation Server 326 Hostname 22, 157 How to Additional users within a network 299 content protection 242 Full version with expiry date 240 Make CD 257 296 network version start different MMF files 258 time limitation 238 HTML Executable 42 HTML File 42, 182, 247, 257 Hyperlink PDF 250 Powerpoint 190, 253 PPT 190, 253 Word 194, 256 Hyperlinks Convert 87 **Relative Path** 87

- | -

Icon Change Icon 97, 164, 261 Image 176, 248 **Registration Image** 78 Splash Image 77 Import 80 Import File 83 Increase network licence 119 Installation 97, 164, 261 Harddisk Network 97, 164, 261

340

Installation Code 154, 316, 322 License Viewer 291 Installer 97, 164, 261 Introduction Help 106 Item counter deactivate 293

- J -

java 174, 259 JPG 144, 147, 148, 176, 248

- K -

Key Format 109 Keylist 110, 112 Knowledge Base 52, 261, 305

- L -

Language 50 Generator Player 85 Licence Display 237, 329 Licence Agreement 333 Licence File 24.160 Licence Information 108 Licence Options 23 Licence per concurrent user 298 Licence per PC 297 Licence per User 298 Licence Type 69 Licence Viewer 108, 138, 139, 237, 329 License Holder 291 License Viewer 139, 289, 291 Deactivate License 293 Modules 293 licprotectormme.lic 234, 328 Lightroom 43 Log file 107, 295

- M -

MAC Address 22

MAC Address + UNC Pathname 158 Mac Adress 155 Macromedia Authorware 26 Director 37 Macromedia Director 259 Macromedia Flashpaper 194, 255 Make CD 257 Matchware Mediator 47 183 MDI Mediator 47 273 Menu Advanced 274 Basic 280 Caption 281 **CDMenuPro** 284 Define 281 EXE file 198 Header 281 Include in Project 283 Logo 281 Own Menu 284 Quick Menu Builder 286 Menu Creator 273 MMF 160 Modules License Viewer 293 Moyea 39 MP3 20, 141, 177, 248 MPEG 179, 243 Multimedia Player 21, 160, 289 Start Options 289 **Multimedia Protector** Licence 234, 328 Music Player 141 Configuration 142

- N -

NAS drive 153 net 174, 259 Network Installation 97, 164, 261 Network Licence 119 per concurrent user 298 per PC 297 per server 299

341

342

Network Licence 119 per User 298 Network license deactivate 293 Network Version 296 No Copy Protection 75, 117 No evaluation version 136 Northcode SWF Studio 48

- 0 -

Online Activation 63, 129, 230 Stepy by Step 325 Online Help 54 Online Shop 201 Keylist 112 Open Project 54 Options Converting 87 Player 85, 87

- P -

PDF 20, 183, 249 **PDF** Printer Driver 194, 256 PDF with Hyperlink 250 Photo 148 Photo Album 144 Airtight 150 Plaver 21, 59, 160, 289 Copy Protection Violation 138 E-Mail Activation 62, 131 **Evaluation Expired** 136 Fax Activation 66, 132 Licence Viewer 139 Music 141 No free licence 138 **Online Activation** 63, 129 Phone Activation 68, 133 Start Options 289 Start Screen 128 switch -f 258 switch -v 139 Unlock Key 134 Web Activation 63, 129

Player Options 85 Powerpoint 20, 186, 251 Protect 177, 188 PowerPoint Viewer 177, 188 Powerpoint with Hyperlink 190, 253 PPT 20, 186, 251 PPT with Hyperlink 190, 253 PPTVIEW.EXE 177, 188 Premium Version 56 **Prevent Printing** 85 Print Disable 186, 193, 195 Permit 85 Prevent 85 Tutorial 11, 227 Product Activation 228 Product Name 59 **Program Versions** 56 Projec Open 54 Project 125 Copy Create 122 File Name 123 Folder 124 Split project 305 Test 92 Update 311 Prolong 239 Evaluation Trial version 239 Prolong Trial Period 119 Protect EXE files 165, 246 Protect Executables 174, 259 Protection 74

- Q -

Quick Menu Builder 286 Quicktime 20, 179, 243

- R -

Refresh Data83Registration Image77Reinstall Software233

Index

Relative Path in Hyperlinks 87 Repair database 102 Repair project file 102

- S -

Samples 57 89 Save Save Project 89.91 Select Data Folder 83 Serial Number 110, 230, 319 manual creation 110 Your Multimedia Protector Serial Number 329 Share-it! 215 Shop 201 Keylist 112 Show Quick Start Screen 106 Skin 50 Software Activation 228 Spash Image 77 Standard Version 56 Start Online Help 54 Tutorial 54 Start a flash file 198 Start external file 242 Start File 80 Start Maximized 85 Start Screen Player 128 Support 261, 305 supported file types 20 SWF 20, 176, 254 SWF Studio 48 swftools 48 System Requirements 19

- T -

Tamper Dection74Test Project92Testdrive92Time limited full version73Time limited full version version240Time limited version238

Toolbook 48 Transfer Hardware Id 155 Transfer license 307 **Trial Period** Prolong 119 **Trial Version** 239 Prolong Turbodemo 50 Tutorial 54 Video 14

uninstall 261 241 Unlimited starts Unlock Key 134 **General Information** 113 With Copy Portection 116 With Web Activation Server 118 Without Copy Portection 117 Update 52, 101, 311 Update Subscription 101, 234, 237, 329, 330 Updates 17, 106 Service Pack 2.0.1 19 URL Web Activation Server 63 Web Administration Interface 103 USB stick 121, 159, 312

- V -

237,

vb 174, 259 Version date 101 Version Information 52, 106 Version number 101 Video 176, 247 Video Tutorial 14 Visio 20. 194. 255 Vista 19 Volume ID 22, 155 Volume ID + UNC Pathname 158

- W -

WAV 20, 193, 254 Web Activation 63, 129 343

Web Activation 63, 129 Step by Step 325 Web Activation Server 321, 324 Administration Interface 326 Hosting 326 Settings 103 URL 63 Web Activation Server Licence 108 Web Administration Interface 326 URL 103 Web Shop 59, 201 Keylist 112 Welcome Screen 52 Disable 106 Enable 106 Windows Media Video 20, 179, 243 Windows Vista 19 Word 20, 194, 255 Word with Hyperlink 194, 256 Workflow 316 Wrapper for EXE 166

- X -

344

XML file 196, 258

- Z -

Zinc 37 ZIP file 89